MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 32

King Rother

König Rother

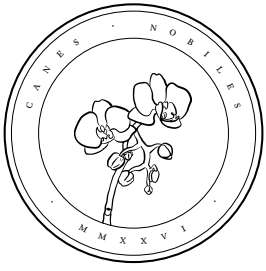
King Rother

The Bridal Quest to Constantinople

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

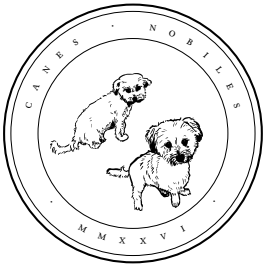


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 32 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows König Rother, herausgegeben von Karl von Bahder, Altdeutsche Textbibliothek 6 (Halle: Max Niemeyer, 1884)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Bahder numbers them, every fifth verse in the outer margin; a verse he marks as lost prints as asterisks and is not counted. The paragraphs are his; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's. His italic, which marks his departures from the Heidelberg manuscript, is not reproduced.

CONTENTS

I · The Unwed King 7
II · The Envoys at Constantine's Court 18
III · The Dungeon 28
IV · Berchter's Counsel 35
V · The Voyage of Dietrich 48
VI · The Exile Received 62
VII · The Lion and the Wall 75
VIII · Dietrich's Bounty 89
IX · The Quarrel over the Seat 106
X · The Princess at the Feast 120
XI · The Golden and Silver Shoes 133
XII · The Envoys Brought Out 148
XIII · The Harp Behind the Hanging 162
XIV · Ymelot Captured 175
XV · The Merchant's Ship 190
XVI · The Princess Stolen 204
XVII · The Muster at Bari 217
XVIII · Rother as Pilgrim 237
XIX · The Gallows Prepared 251
XX · The Battle at the Gallows 264
XXI · Constantine Yields 284
XXII · Pippin's Birth 303
XXIII · Pippin Knighted 321

I · THE UNWED KING

Rother of Bari, the greatest king ever crowned at Rome, has no wife, and his counts press him to marry. He fears to woo a king's daughter whose father might avenge an ill outcome. Lupold names the daughter of Constantine of Constantinople, whose every suitor has lost his life, and Herman proposes Lupold as messenger. Lupold asks for eleven counts, each with twelve knights, and they swear to go. At the shore Rother names three lays on his harp: if ever they hear them in distress, he will be near.

Bî deme westeren mere
By the western sea

saz ein kuninc, der heiz Rœ̈ther;
sat a king, who was-called Rother;

in der stat zû Bâre
in the city at Bari

dâ lebete er zû wâre
there lived he in truth

mit vil grôzen êrin.
with very great honors.

ime dientin andere hêren:
to-him served other lords:

zwêne und sibinzich kuninge,
two and seventy kings,

biderve unde vormige,
worthy and valiant,

die wâren ime al undertân.
they were to-him all subject.

er was der aller hêriste man,
he was the of-all most-exalted man,

der dâ zû Rôme
who there at Rome

ie intfînc die krônen.
ever received the crown.

Růther was ein hêre,
Rother was a lord,

sîne dinc stûnden mit êrin
his affairs stood with honors

unde mit grôzen zuchtin an sînen hove —
and with great breeding at his court—

iz nehaben die bo̊che gelogen —
it unless-have the books lied—

daz ime dâ an gôte nihtes negebrach,
that to-him there in good nothing lacked,

wene daz er âne vrouwen was.
except that he without lady was.

dô rededen die jungen grâven,
then spoke the young counts,

die in deme hove wâren,
who in the court were,

wie sê âne vrouwen
how they without lady

ir erbe solden bûwen.
their inheritance should hold.

dô dûchte sie alle recht,
then seemed to-them all right,

swâr sô wâr ein gût knecht,
whoever so were a good knight,

deme die rîche wêrin undertân
to-whom the realms were subject

unde sô manic wol geboren man,
and so many-a well born man,

daz er ein wîp nême,
that he a woman should-take,

dê ime zû vrouwen gezême.
who to-him as lady should-befit.

unde virsciede er ân erben,
and should-depart he without heirs,

sô wâneden sê irsterben;
so believed they to-perish;

weme sie dan die krônen
to-whom they then the crown

solden geben zô Rŏ̈me?
should give at Rome?

Alsus redte der hêrre:
Thus spoke the lord:

„ich vorchte vil sêre,
„I fear very sorely,

daz ic kůninges dŏ̈chter gehîge
that I king's daughter should-wed

unde iz tan uvele gethige,
and it then ill should-turn-out,

dat her ez gewreche ane mînen lîph.
that he it should-avenge on my person.

gerne hetich ein wolgeboren wîph,
gladly would-have-I a well-born woman,

die van allem adele
who of all nobility

gezême eime koninge
should-befit a king

unde zô vrouwen rîchen herzogen.
and as lady to-rich dukes.

ic neweiz sie neirgen in dime lande,
I know her nowhere in this land,

die mir sô wol gevalle,
who to-me so well should-please,

daz ir sie lobit alle“.
that you her praise all“.

Dô heter ein grâven
Then had-he a count

der half ime wol zŭ wâren
who helped him well in truth

mit listen grôzer êren:
with arts of-great honors:

sô dienete er sîme hêren.
so served he his lord.

des quam er sît in grôze nôt.
of-that came he afterward into great distress.

Lûpolt heiz der helet gůt,
Lupold was-called the hero good,

der was in Rôtheris hove
who was in Rother's court

mit grôzeme vlîze gezogen,
with great diligence reared,

er was sîn man unde mâc;
he was his man and kinsman;

an deme stûnt ouch sîn rât.
on him stood also his counsel.

der was der aller getrûiste man,
he was the of-all most-faithful man,

den ie sichein rômisc kuninc gewan.
whom ever any Roman king won.

die tûren volcdegene
the worthy folk-thanes

die giengen zô samene,
they went to gathering,

die wîsen althêrren,
the wise old-lords,

die plâgen grôzer êren
who tended of-great honors

und gôter zuchte under in.
and of-good breeding among them.

sie nanten ein megetîn.
they named a maiden.

Lûpolt der sprach zi aller êrist:
Lupold he spoke at all first:

„ich weiz wizze Crist
„I know may-know Christ

ôster over sê
east over sea

einis rîken kuninges tȫchter vil hêr
a rich king's daughter very noble

dâ zô Constantînopole
there at Constantinople

in der mêren burge.
in the famous castle.

ir vater heizit Constantîn,
her father is-called Constantine,

schône ist die tochter sîn:
fair is the daughter his:

siu lûchtit ûz deme gedigene,
she shines out-of the household,

sô daz gesterne tůt von deme himele.
as the stars do from the heaven.

siu lûchtit vor anderen wîben,
she shines before other women,

sô daz golt von der sîden.
as the gold from the silk.

siu ist in midin alsô smal,
she is in middle so slender,

sie gezême eime hêrren wol,
she would-befit a lord well,

unde mochte von ir adele
and might from her nobility

gezeme eime koninge.
befit a king.

ir dînet aller degelîche.
to-her serve all daily.

daz wizze aber got der rîche,
that may-know however God the rich,

umbe dê stât iz môwelîche,
about her stands it troublesome,

wande ir nebat nie nechein man,
for her asked never any man,

er môste den lîph virloren hân".
he unless-must the life lost have".

Alsô der kuninc dô virnam
As the king then perceived

den rât der was getân,
the counsel that was done,

ein marcgrâve der heiz Herman,
a margrave who was-called Herman,

mid deme er êrist reden began,
with whom he first to-speak began,

wer der bote mochte sîn,
who the messenger might be,

dê ime irwurbe daz megetîn.
who to-him should-win the maiden.

dô sprach der marcgrâve:
then spoke the margrave:

„ich sage dir ze wâren,
„I say to-thee in truth,

hêrre, iz tȯt Lîpolt,
lord, it does Lupold,

die ist der van allen herzen holt
he is to-thee of all hearts devoted

unde weit ouch wol wê ez umbe daz wîph stât.
and knows also well how it about the woman stands.

trûwen, daz is mîn rât:
truly, that is my counsel:

machtû in mit minnen
mayst-thou him with love

in dê rede bringin,
into the matter bring,

daz er dîn bode wille sîn,
that he thy messenger will be,

der werbit dir aller trûwelîchis umbe daz megetîn".
he woos for-thee of-all most-faithfully for the maiden".

Rûther sande boden drâte
Rother sent messengers quickly

nâch Lîpolde in eine kemenâte.
for Lupold into a chamber.

alser vor den kuninc quam gegangen,
as-he before the king came walking,

dô war er wol untfangen.
then was he well received.

der marcgrâve rômt ime den stœl:
the margrave cleared to-him the seat:

daz heiz in sîn hêrre dôn.
that bade him his lord do.

Alsô Liupolt gisaz,
As Lupold sat,

der kůninc gezůgelîche sprach:
the king courteously spoke:

„ich hân durch michele nôt
„I have for great need

nâch dir gesant, helet gôt,
for thee sent, hero good,

daz tů mir werbes umbe daz megetîn,
that thou for-me woo for the maiden,

die dâ sô wundrinscône sî,
who there so wondrous-fair be,

unde hilf mir mîner êrin:
and help me of-my honors:

jâ sprechint dise hêrren,
yea say these lords,

dû sîst aller best darzů̈,
thou art of-all best thereto,

helit, nû salt tůz durc dînis selbes frumicheit dů̈n“.
hero, now shalt thou-it for thy self's profit do“.

Alsus redete dô Liupolt
Thus spoke then Lupold

(dem kuninge Růther was her holt):
(to-the king Rother was he devoted):

„hêrre, dune salt mich sô verre manin niet.
„lord, thou shalt me so far urge not.

dîn êre sîn mir alsô liep,
thy honor be to-me so dear,

daz ic dir werbe die bodescaft,
that I for-thee pursue the embassy,

so ich aller trûwelîchis mac
as I of-all most-faithfully may

umbe daz vil scône wîp
about the very fair woman

oder ich virlêsen den lîp.
or I lose the life.

nû heiz dir gewinnen hêrren,
now bid for-thyself win lords,

die dû mit dînen êren
whom thou with thy honors

wol mugis senden
well mayst send

ûz disen landen,
out-of these lands,

eilf rîche grâvin,
eleven rich counts,

der zwelfte bin ich zwâren.
the twelfth am I truly.

ich wil daz have grâven îgelîch
I will that have count each

zwelf rîtêr hêrlîch,
twelve knights lordly,

die alle sô gût gewant haven,
who all so good clothing have,

daz wir âne laster vor ein kuninc mugin tragen“.
that we without reproach before a king may wear“.

Der kuninc dô sînen hof gebôt.
The king then his court summoned.

sowaz er vursten hete gesamenôt,
whatever he of-princes had gathered,

zwô und sibenzic krônen,
two and seventy crowns,

die dêneten ime scône.
they served to-him fairly.

den sagete hê sînen willen.
to-them told he his will.

dô sprach vile manic helit snelle:
then spoke very many-a hero bold:

„hêrre, woldit ir mic senden
„lord, would you me send

hinnen zo̊ der erden enden,
hence to the earth's ends,

daz newiderredtich durch neheinen man:
that gainsay-I for no man:

wir sulen ûch alle sîn underdân“.
we shall to-you all be subject“.

eilf grâven ime dô swö̲ren,
eleven counts to-him then swore,

daz sie erme hêrren umbe die maget vôren.
that they for-their lord for the maid should-fare.

sie wâren dem kuninge alle holt;
they were to-the king all devoted;

daz machete silber unde golt,
that made silver and gold,

daz er in kuninclîche gap.
that he to-them kingly gave.

sie wurben des hêrren bodescap.
they pursued the lord's embassy.

Alse die vart wart gelobit,
As the journey was vowed,

dô nam swert ûfe deme hove
then took sword upon the court

ein vil junger degen.
a very young thane.

beide sabel unde kelen,
both sable and throat-fur,

ein grâve der heiz Erewîn,
a count who was-called Erwin,

dâ mite zîreter die rîtêr sîn.
there with adorned-he the knights his.

die anderen hêrren dâten sam,
the other lords did likewise,

vil wol vazzetin ire man.
very well equipped their men.

ir ros wâren alle blanc.
their horses were all white.

iz quam in nie nichein lant
there came into never any land

sô manic bate wol getân.
so many-a messenger well made.

sie leite ein vile listiger man,
them led a very cunning man,

der was dem kuninge vile lêph
who was to-the king very dear

unde nehâte der untrûwen niet.
and had of-the faithlessness not.

Die kîle wâren gevazzôt.
The keels were laden.

van den stade wolde Liupolt der helit gôt.
from the shore would Lupold the hero good.

der kuninc heiz in stille haven
the king bade him still hold

und bad eme sîne harfen dar tragen.
and bade to-him his harp thither carry.

einis zeines her ime gedâchte,
of-a sign he to-himself thought,

daz her sint vollenbrâchte.
that he afterward accomplished.

er hiez die hêrren alle gân,
he bade the lords all go,

oven ûfen kiel stân,
above upon-the keel stand,

drî leike er in nande,
three lays he to-them named,

die sie sint wole irkanden.
which they afterward well recognized.

dô sprach der hêrre vile gůt:
then spoke the lord very good:

„kumit ir imer in decheine nôt,
„(if)-come you ever into any distress,

swâ ir virnemet die leiche drî,
wherever you hear the lays three,

dâ sulder mîn gewis sîn".
there shall-you of-me certain be".

des vrouwete sich manic man,
of-that rejoiced himself many-a man,

der sint in grôze nôt quam.
who afterward into great distress came.

II · THE ENVOYS AT CONSTANTINE'S COURT

The envoys sail with Rother's prayers and land at Constantinople, leaving a merchant to guard their ships. Their jeweled cloaks, worked with golden beasts, and their saddle-bells hung with samite and brocade draw the whole court to gaze, and the queen urges Constantine to receive them with honor. Lupold, given leave to speak, asks for the princess on Rother's behalf. Constantine answers in anger that no man has ever asked for her and kept his head, and declares them all his prisoners.

Iren rûf sie dô hôben,
Their cry they then raised,

von deme stade sie vôren.
from the shore they fared.

eiâ, wê die segele duzzen,
eia, how the sails roared,

dô sie in ouwe vluzzen!
when they into water floated!

die hêrren vluzzin in dat mere.
the lords floated into the sea.

dô stûnt der kuninc Rôther
then stood the king Rother

unde bat got den rîchen unde den gûten
and prayed God the rich and the good

durch sîne ôtmôde,
for his humility,

daz er sie sande
that he them should-send

wider heim zů lande.
back home to land.

er sprach: „swer danne wil scat nemen,
he spoke: „whoever then will treasure take,

deme sal ich in âne zale geben;
to-him shall I it without count give;

wil er aber burge unde lant,
(if)-will he however castles and land,

des gibich ime in sîne gewalt,
of-that give-I to-him into his power,

unz in des selven dunket vil —
until to-him of-the same seems much—

wê gerne ich daz dôn wil! —
how gladly I that do will!—

und helfe ime daz beherten
and help him that maintain

mit mînes silbes swerte“.
with my self's sword“.

Dô vôren die boten hêre
Then fared the messengers noble

ûffe den sê verre
upon the sea far

gegin Constînopole dâr zô Krêchen.
toward Constantinople there to Greece.

ir kiele sê dô stêzen
their keels they then beached

in daz frümede lant.
into the foreign land.

sie trôgen rîterlîch gewant
they wore knightly clothing

alle gelîche,
all alike,

sie vôren vermezzelîche.
they fared boldly.

dô bat Liupolt einen koufman
then bade Lupold a merchant

eine wîle zô dem schiffe gân,
a while to the ship go,

unz sie von hove quêmen,
until they from court should-come,

des wolder ime wol lônen.
for-that would-he him well reward.

einen mantel her ime gab.
a cloak he to-him gave.

‚drì tage unde nacht
‚three days and night

hôdich dir“, sprach der koufman,
guard-I for-thee“, spoke the merchant,

„sowar dû wilt rîtin oder gân.
„wherever thou wilt ride or go.

daz weiz der waldindinger got,
that knows the all-ruling God,

der mer zô lebene gebôt:
who to-me to life commanded:

du hâs mir sô kuninclîche gegeben,
thou hast to-me so kingly given,

ich wil dîner schiffe wol mit triuwen phlegen“.
I will of-thy ships well with faithfulness take-care“.

Die hêrren vazzetin sich,
The lords equipped themselves,

alsech kan virstân mich,
as-I can understand me,

daz nie vor nicheinen man
that never before any man

sô manich schône bode nequam.
so many-a fair messenger came.

ire mantele wâren gesteinit bî der erden
their cloaks were jeweled by the earth

mit den besten jâchanden die ge dorten gewerden;
with the best jacinths that ever could be-found;

die drachen van schîren golde,
the dragons of pure gold,

alsô siez haben wolden;
as they-it have would;

herze unde hinden,
harts and hinds,

maneger slachte wunder
of-many-a kind wonder

truogen die helede gôde
bore the heroes good

ûz van golde an ir gewêde.
out of gold on their garments.

mit samîte und pfellele
with samite and brocade

wâren die sadilschellen
were the saddle-bells

gezîrot, dat was michil loph.
adorned, that was great praise.

sie quâmen schône ûffe den hof.
they came fairly upon the court.

Die hêrren ritin ûffe Constantînis hof.
The lords rode upon Constantine's court.

dâ intfênc man in dê ros.
there received one from-them the horses.

dô lûchte manic jâchant
then shone many-a jacinth

von ênander in daz gewant.
from one-another in the clothing.

der tûrlîchir degen Erwîn
the excellent thane Erwin

der hêz die zwelf rîtâr sîn
he bade the twelve knights his

mit zuchtin nâch ime gân;
with breeding after him go;

die anderen hêrren dâden sam,
the other lords did likewise,

sie gêngen alle in sunderlîch schare,
they went all in separate troops,

ir gewandes nâmen sie grôze ware.
of-their clothing took they great heed.

dâ quam deime kuninge mêre,
there came to-the king tidings,

daz ûffe deme hove wêre
that upon the court were

ein lossam rittirschap.
a lovely knighthood.

eiâ, waz der kaffêre was,
eia, what of-the gapers was,

die den vrouwen sageten,
who to-the ladies told,

wilich gewant dê geste haveten!
what-kind-of clothing the guests had!

Alsus redete dû gôte kuningîn:
Thus spoke the good queen:

„nû stant ûf, herre Constantîn,
„now stand up, lord Constantine,

und intfâ wir dise geste.
and receive we these guests.

wê gerne ich daz wiste,
how gladly I that would-know,

wannen sie kumen wêren.
whence they come were.

ir gewant is seltsêne.
their clothing is strange.

swer sie hât ûz gesant
whoever them has out sent

her in unser lant,
hither into our land,

der ist ein statehafter man.
he is a substantial man.

of ich mic rechte versinnen kan,
if I myself rightly bethink can,

mich dunket gôt, hêrre,
to-me seems good, lord,

daz wir dese boden êren.
that we these messengers honor.

sine sint der antworte nicht gewone,
they are of-the answer not accustomed,

die du tôs manigen boten vore.
which thou doest to-many messengers before.

ich wêne daz nie sô manic man
I believe that never so many-a man

schône in diz lant nequam.
fair into this land came.

sie sint alle wol getân,
they are all well made,

beide ros unde man.
both horse and man.

iz nequâmen nê lûte sô wunnenclîche
there came never people so delightful

in diz Constantînis rîche“.
into this Constantine's realm“.

In den hof der kuninc gînc,
Into the court the king went,

die helede er alle wol intfênc,
the heroes he all well received,

unde die gôte kuningîn,
and the good queen,

sie hiez sie willekume sîn
she bade them welcome be

alle gelîche
all alike

unde neig en gezugenlîche.
and bowed to-them courteously.

sich hôf ein grôz gedranc:
itself raised a great throng:

sie dûchte seltsêne daz gewant.
to-them seemed strange the clothing.

von rîtârin unde von vrouwen
from knights and from ladies

dâr wart ein michil schouwen.
there was a great gazing.

dô redite ein [alt]vrouwe die heiz Herlint:
then spoke an [old]woman who was-called Herlint:

„swannen dise hêrren kumen sint,
„whencesoever these lords come are,

daz ist ein wunderlîchiz lant.
that is a wondrous land.

sie tragen sô manigen jâchant,
they wear so many-a jacinth,

gezîrôt mit deme golde;
adorned with the gold;

daz daz got wolde,
that that God would,

daz wer den kuninc gesêhen,
that we the king should-see,

des dise boten wêren“.
whose these messengers were“.

Lûpolt zô dem kuninge sprach:
Lupold to the king spoke:

„nu orlôve mir mînes hêrren bodescap,
„now allow me my lord's embassy,

dar umbe ich bin gesant
where for I am sent

her in diz lant,
hither into this land,

daz ich der sage, hêrre gôt,
that I to-thee say, lord good,

waz der ein rîche kuninc inbôt.
what to-thee a rich king sent-word.

der ist der aller schôniste man,
he is the of-all fairest man,

der ie von wîbe gequam
who ever from woman came

unde verit mit grôzer menige.
and fares with great company.

ime dienent snelle helede.
to-him serve bold heroes.

scal unde vedirspil,
sound and hawks,

des ist in mînis hêrren hove vil,
of-that is in my lord's court much,

ros unde juncvrouwen
horses and young-ladies

und ander rîtâris gezouwe,
and other knights' gear,

des vlîzit sich mîn hêrre.
in-that busies himself my lord.

von dû mahtû mit êren
from that mayst-thou with honors

mir irlouben mînes hêrren bodescap,
to-me allow my lord's embassy,

wande her weiz aller tugende kracht".
for he knows of-all virtue the-strength".

Alsus antwarde Constantîn:
Thus answered Constantine:

„nû sal iz dir irloubet sîn
„now shall it to-thee allowed be

durch dînes hêrren willen,
for thy lord's sake,

nû werph swaz dû willes.
now deliver whatever thou wilt.

dû bist ein wêtlîcher man,
thou art a handsome man,

dû salt mînen urlob hân".
thou shalt my leave have".

dô sprach Lûpolt
then spoke Lupold

(dem kuninge Rôther was er holt):
(to-the king Rother was he devoted):

„nû virnim mich, kuninc Constantîn,
„now hear me, king Constantine,

mîn hêrre gerit der tochter dîn,
my lord desires of-the daughter thine,

der ist geheizen Rôther
he is called Rother

und sizzit westert uber mere.
and sits westward over sea.

her ist ein statehafter man,
he is a substantial man,

her wolde dîne tochter zô einer kuninginne hân;
he would thy daughter for a queen have;

und wil daz got von himele,
and (if)-wills that God from heaven,

daz sie kumen zô samene,
that they come to gathering,

sone gewan nie bezzer wunne
so won never better delight

wîp mit einem manne“.
woman with a man“.

Trôrich sprach dô Constantîn
Sorrowful spoke then Constantine

(zurnich was der môt sîn):
(wrathful was the spirit his):

„daz ich die rede irloubit hân,
„that I the speech allowed have,

des môz ich lange trôrich stân.
for-that must I long sorrowful stand.

wêre mîn siete sô getân,
were my custom so made,

daz ich sie gêbe geheinen man,
that I her should-give to-any man,

sô mochtich sie mit êren
so might-I her with honors

senden dîme hêrren.
send to-thy lord.

daz weiz aver got der rîche,
that knows however God the rich,

dû tâtes wîslîche,
thou didst wisely,

dû vurreditis umbe die bodescap,
thou spokest-beforehand about the embassy,

dune bescôhetis anderis nimmer mêr den tac.
thou shouldst-see otherwise never more the day.

wande mîner tochter nebat nie nichein man,
for my daughter asked never any man,

er nemôste sîn hôvet virlorin hân.
he unless-must his head lost have.

sô mag iz û nicht irgân,
so may it to-you not go,

ir sît alle gevân
you are all captured

unde negesêt ûweris hêrren
and see your lord's

rîche nimmer mêre".
realm never more".

III · THE DUNGEON

The envoys lie a year and a day in a dark dungeon, starving, in frost and wet, with only the water beneath them to drink; Erwin laments to his brother Lupold, and they cry to God. Constantine has his people and the ladies view the treasures in their ships, golden brooches and rings for the ladies, bracelets, banners, and tents, and gives the hoard to his chamberlain to keep. At home Rother mourns his messengers, and his old counselors beg him to go and see whether they live.

Der kuninc heiz die botin kêre
The king bade the messengers turn

in einin kerkêre.
into a dungeon.

dâ wâren sie inne manigen tac,
there were they in many-a day,

daz ir nie nichein dê sunnen gesach,
that of-them never any the sun saw,

noch den mânen sô liecht.
nor the moon so bright.

leider sie neheten vrouwede nicht
alas they had joy not

wone vrost unde naz.
except frost and wet.

hei wî grôz ir arbeit was!
hey how great their hardship was!

sê hâten hungir unde nôt,
they had hunger and distress,

sie wâren nâ blibin tôd.
they were nearly remained dead.

die dâr heime gnôc habeten,
who there at-home enough had,

mit deme wazzere sie sich labeten,
with the water they themselves refreshed,

daz under in swebete.
that under them floated.

wê kûme die hêrren libeten!
how scarcely the lords lived!

dô weinte manic man
then wept many-a man

sînen lîb wol getân,
his body well made,

ir herzerûwe was grôz,
their heart-rue was great,

sie nehetin zô niemanne trôst.
they had in no-one comfort.

iedoch half in got der gôte
yet helped them God the good

durc sîn ôtmôte,
for his humility,

daz sie alle samen gesunde
that they all together sound

quâmen heim zô lande.
should-come home to land.

Nû mugider hôren mêre
Now may-you hear more

dê nôte von den hêrren.
of-the distress of the lords.

dô sprach der hêrre Erwîn
then spoke the lord Erwin

zô Lûpolde deme meister sîn:
to Lupold the master his:

„owî, lieber brûder mîn,
„alas, dear brother mine,

wie lange sul wir hie sîn?
how long shall we here be?

wer helfit nû den mâgen,
who helps now the kinsmen,

den wir gôtis schuldic wâren
to-whom we of-goods indebted were

oder weme sal unser erbe
or to-whom shall our inheritance

zô jungestin werde?
at last come?

der Adâmen gebilidôte,
who Adam fashioned,

der helfe uns ûze derrer nôte“.
he help us out-of this distress“.

dô vielen sie al in crûces stal,
then fell they all in cross's posture,

michil wart der ir scal [hal],
great was there their sound [*resounded*],

dâ sie zô gote riefen.
when they to God cried.

wê trôrich sie weifen!
how sorrowful they wailed!

vil trûrich iz ûz ir herzen gienc.
very sorrowful it out-of their hearts went.

etlichir in daz wazzer viel,
many-a-one into the water fell,

daz er dar inne belochen lac.
that he there in shut lay.

sìt gesâhen sie den tac,
afterward saw they the day,

daz sie vrôlîche
that they joyfully

besâzen dâ heime ir rîche.
possessed there at-home their realm.

Der kuninc heiz dô hinen gân
The king bade then thither go

beide mâge unde man,
both kinsmen and men,

daz sie die zîrheit gesâhen,
that they the finery should-see,

die in den kielen lâgen.
which in the keels lay.

dô giengin die juncvrouwin
then went the young-ladies

dure wunder schouwen
for wonder to-gaze

mit in zô den schiffen,
with them to the ships,

dâ sie daz gôt wistin.
where they the goods knew.

nu nekan û nichein man gesagen
now can to-you no man tell

die wunder, die in den kielen lâgen.
the wonders, that in the keels lay.

dâ inne was daz golt rôt
there in was the gold red

kleine gewierôt,
finely wrought,

nuskele unde vingerîn,
brooches and rings,

daz die botin mitsam in
that the messengers along-with them
hetin brâcht den vrouwen;
had brought to-the ladies;
vunf dûsint bouge,
five thousand bracelets,
die sie al geben wolden,
which they all give would,
so sie widir kêren solden;
when they back turn should;
rossekleit unde vanen
horse-trappings and banners
lac dâr ein michil teil ane
lay there a great part of
unde vêhe gezelde,
and particolored tents,
wole geworcht mit golde,
well wrought with gold,
gâben in ir holden,
gave to-them their friends,
dô sie von lande varen solden,
when they from land fare should,
die sie in selben heten irwelit.
which they for-them self had chosen.
dâ was manic snellir helit
there was many-a bold hero
vil virmezzinlîche ûz kumen,
very boldly out come,
iz nehaben dê bôche gelogen.
it unless-have the books lied.

Nû sagit man uns von schazze und von golde:
Now tells one us of treasure and of gold:
sower daz sien wolde,
whoever that see would,

des lac dâ ein vil michil magen.
of-that lay there a very great heap.

der kuninc heiz iz abe tragen
the king bade it off carry

und beval iz sîme kamerâre,
and entrusted it to-his chamberlain,

daz er is alsô plêge,
that he of-it so should-take-care,

sowanne man iz haben wolde,
whenever one it have would,

daz er iz haben solde,
that he it have should,

iz wâre wâfen oder vane,
it were weapon or banner,

daz is icht quême dane;
that of-it not should-come away;

swâ ein ros irsturbe,
wherever a horse should-die,

daz ein ander widir gewunnin wurde.
that an other again won should-be.

daz gebôt er ime an sîn liben
that commanded he him on his life

und heiz in des sô plegen,
and bade him of-it so take-care,

ob man iz immer wider gegêbe,
if one it ever back should-give,

daz iz dâr allez wêre.
that it there all were.

Nû wertiz jâr unde dag,
Now lasted-it year and day,

daz vil manic man lac
that very many-a man lay

in deme kerkenêre
in the dungeon

unde qualitin sich sêre:
and tormented themselves sorely:

grôz was ir weinen.
great was their weeping.

unde ouch Rôther dâ heime
and also Rother there at-home

vil sêre trôrôte
very sorely mourned

umbe die botin gôte.
for the messengers good.

her wranc sîne hende
he wrung his hands

unde gedâchte in manigin ende,
and thought in many-an end,

wê er daz besâge,
how he that should-learn,

wâ sîne boten lâgen.
where his messengers lay.

dô giengen die alden râtgeben,
then went the old counselors,

der vrunt dâ wâren under wegen,
whose friends there were on way,

die weinôtin vil sêre
they wept very sorely

und bâtent ouch ir hêrren,
and begged also their lord,

daz er sie silbe gesêche,
that he them himself should-see,

ob sie lebende wêren.
whether they living were.

IV · BERCHTER'S COUNSEL

Rother sits three days on a stone in silence. He calls old Berchter of Meran, whose son Helfrich fell fighting the heathen beyond the Elbe and seven of whose sons are among the envoys. Berchter offers a thousand knights for war; Rother takes counsel of his lords, and when an old duke speaks against the venture, Berchter knocks him down. The council advises Rother to cross the sea in the guise of an exiled warrior with his treasure. He summons his vassals, and the giant Asprian answers his letter with a band of giants.

Rôther ûf eime steine saz —
Rother upon a stone sat—

wê trûrich ime sîn herze was! —
how sorrowful to-him his heart was!—

drê tage unde drîe nacht,
three days and three nights,

daz er zô niemanne nicht nesprach,
that he to no-one anything spoke,

wene daz her allez dâchte,
except that he all-the-while thought,

wê er kumen mochte
how he come might

zô Kriechin in daz lant,
to Greece into the land,

dâ er hete gesant
where he had sent

manigin boten hêrlîch.
many-a messenger lordly.

dô heiz er gên vor sich
then bade he go before himself

Berchter einen alden man,
Berchter an old man,

zô deme er allen sînen rat nam.
from whom he all his counsel took.

des sune wâren ir sibene
whose sons were of-them seven

* * *
(lacuna)

der nelegitiz ouch niergin nidere.
who laid-it also nowhere down.

her sprach: „dû salt mir râtin, Berchter,
he spoke: „thou shalt me counsel, Berchter,

wê wir kumen ober mer
how we come over sea

zû Constônopole in dê stat.
to Constantinople into the city.

is daz des got gestadet hât,
(if)-is that it God permitted has,

daz der kuninc Constantîn
that the king Constantine

gehoubetit hât der boten mîn,
beheaded has the messengers mine,

sone willich nimmer mêre
so will-I never more

belîven an Rômesker erden,
remain on Roman earth,

êr iz ime an den lîb gât;
before it to-him at the life goes;

owî wê trôric her mich gemachit hât!“
alas how sorrowful he me made has!“

Alsus redete dô Berchter der alde man,
Thus spoke then Berchter the old man,

(er was ein grâve von Merân):
(he was a count of Meran):

„ich hete eilif sune hêrlîch;
„I had eleven sons lordly;

der zwelte hiez Helfrich,
the twelfth was-called Helfrich,

den santes dû uber Elve
him sentest thou over Elbe

mit vil grôzer menige.
with very great company.

dâ vôr er hereverte
there fared he war-journeys

und manige sturm herte,
and many-a battle hard,

dâ er die heidinen quelete,
where he the heathens tormented,

die sunder êwe leveten:
who without law lived:

an godes dienste wart er irslagen.
in God's service was he slain.

den nemuge wer nummer verklagen.
him may we never lament-enough.

nû sîn ir sibene an desse vart.
now are of-them seven on this journey.

owî daz ich ie geborn wart,
alas that I ever born was,

ich vil weineger man!
I very weeping man!

waz ich lieber kinder virlorin hân!
what I of-dear children lost have!

Lûpolt unde Erewîn
Lupold and Erwin

wâren die edelsten sune mîn.
were the noblest sons mine.

sowanne ich der vunver virdage,
whenever I the five pass-over-in-silence,

dise zwêne nemach ich nimmir virklagen.
these two may I never lament-away.

Rôther, lieber hêrre mîn,
Rother, dear lord mine,

daz sal nû mîn rât sîn,
that shall now my counsel be,

daz wir varen herevart
that we fare war-journey

und ir beide Ungerin und Krêchen slât.
and you both Hungarians and Greeks slay.

ich vôruch rîtâre dûsint.
I lead-for-you knights thousand.

mich rûwent sêre mîne kint".
me grieve sorely my children".

Des antworde ime dô Rôther, der getrûwe man:
Of-that answered him then Rother, the faithful man:

„des saltû imer lôn hân.
„for-that shalt-thou ever reward have.

jâ hôrtich mînen vater hî bevoren sprechen,
yea heard-I my father here before speak,

sower wêre ein gôt recke,
whoever were a good warrior,

daz her unrechte tête,
that he wrongly should-do,

sô man ime gôten rât gêbe,
so one him good counsel should-give,

daz er des nicht nenême.
that he it not should-take.

nû wil ich ûffe den hof gân:
now will I upon the court go:

wir suln iz den hêrren allen sagen
we shall it the lords all tell

unde kunden iz gôten knechtin —
and make-known it to-good knights—

daran tô wir rechte —
therein do we rightly—

wie iz in gevalle,
how it to-them please,

unde bedenken unsich alle.
and consider ourselves all.

wat ob ittelîcher ist,
what if any-one is,

der hât bezzere list,
who has better wisdom,

dan wir uns haben genumen?
than we us have taken?

war umbe solde wir mit sô manigime kumen
what for should we with so many come

hin zô Krêchen,
thither to Greece,

wîne wisten wêrlîche,
we-not knew truly,

ob sê wâren gehoubitôd?
whether they were beheaded?

waz ob sie der grimmige tôt
what if them the grim death

noch hât neicht bevangin?
yet has not seized?

sôche wir sie mit here dan,
(if)-seek we them with host then,

sô quelit men die helede lossam.
so torments one the heroes lovely.

daz weiz der waldendinger gut,
that knows the all-ruling God,

der mer zô lebene gebôt,
who to-me to life commanded,

sô rûwin sie mich sêre".
so grieve they me sorely".

dô weinitin dê hêrren.
then wept the lords.

Alsus redete dô Berther der alde man:
Thus spoke then Berchter the old man:

„kuninc, dune mochtis nimmer sô gôte sinne habe,
„king, thou mightst never so good wits have,

ichne wolde dir gerne gevolgich sîn.
I-unless would to-thee gladly obedient be.

die leit die sîn half mîn.
the sorrows they are half mine.

nû samene, hêrre, dîne man,
now gather, lord, thy men,

ich wil is gerne iren rât hân,
I will of-it gladly their counsel have,

mit wie getânen sinnen
with how fashioned wits

wir Kriechen bekennen.
we Greece should-come-to-know.

daz is sin, hêrre.
that is sense, lord.

mich rûwent vil sêre
me grieve very sorely

mîne sûne wol getân,
my sons well made,

die ich wunderlîche virloren hân.
whom I wondrously lost have.

die sandich durch dîne êre.
them sent-I for thy honor.

nû wêstu, lieber hêrre,
now knowest-thou, dear lord,

alsô vil als ich,
as much as I,

wei iz an iren dingin kumen is,
how it with their affairs come is,

wene gut durch sîne krefte
unless God through his strength

helfe mir schadehaftin,
should-help me damaged-one,

daz daz muge geschê,
that that may happen,

daz ich mîne kint lebende gesê“.
that I my children living should-see“.

Rôther gînc zô hove
Rother went to court

mit deme alden herzogen
with the old duke

unde bat sîne liebesten man
and bade his dearest men

vor sich an den rât gân.
before himself to the council go.

dô dê hêrren virnâmen
when the lords perceived

die starken nûmare,
the hard tidings,

dâ hôrde man manigin vromen man
there heard one many-a valiant man

vromiclîche rede hân,
valiantly speech have,

dâ mide sie ir hêrren
there with they their lord

hulfen grôzer êrin.
helped of-great honors.

sie giengen zô samene
they went to gathering

sprâchen vor die kameren.
spoke before the chamber.

sie reiten iren hêrren,
they counseled their lord,

er solde mit grôzen êrin
he should with great honors

in recke wîs over mere vare,
in warrior manner over sea fare,

sô mochter sîn êre aller bezzist beware;
so might-he his honor of-all best guard;

wente ein ald herzoge
except an old duke

was in Rôtheris hove,
was in Rother's court,

der riet daz man iz solde irwenden.
he counseled that one it should avert.

dô half der vatir sînin kindin.
then helped the father his children.

er sprach: „jâ du zagehafter man,
he spoke: „yea thou cowardly man,

wei trostis dû an disen rât gân?“
how darest thou on this counsel go?“

mit der vûst er in sclôch,
with the fist he him struck,

daz ime ûz deme halse vuor daz blôt
that to-him out-of the throat went the blood

und er ouch lach drîe nacht,
and he also lay three nights,

daz er nehôrte noch nesprach.
that he heard-not nor spoke.

dô sprâchen Bercheris man,
then spoke Berchter's men,

her hete ime al rechte getân.
he had to-him all rightly done.

war umme her in solde sêren?
for what he him should wound?

ir hêrre hete doch schaden mêre
their lord had yet harm more

dan der anderin sicheinir,
than of-the others any,

man nesolde ene nicht leiden.
one should him not harm.

Der herzoge hette den schaden,
The duke had the harm,

im was ein michil slach geslagen.
to-him was a great blow struck.

die hêrren gîngen drâte
the lords went quickly

vor den kuninc mit deme râte
before the king with the counsel

unde reditin under in,
and spoke among them,

ob er is gevolgic wolde sîn.
whether he it obedient would be.

sie sprâchen: „wir haben einis dingis gedâcht
they spoke: „we have of-a thing thought

daz mac wol werden vollebrâcht.
that may well be accomplished.

der herverte ist ein têl zô vil,
of-the war-journey is a part too much,

unde ob dû iz tûn wil,
and if thou it do wilt,

sô machtû dich aller best bewaren,
so mayst-thou thee of-all best guard,

wiltû in recken wîs over mere varen.
(if)-wilt-thou in warrior's manner over sea fare.

wande sôche wer die Kriechin,
for (if)-seek we the Greeks,

daz wizzestû wêrlîche,
that know-thou truly,

sie tûn uns vil zô leide,
they do us very-much to sorrow,

und lebit der boden sichênir,
and (if)-lives of-the messengers any,

sie môzen alle kiesen den tôd,
they must all choose the death,

des is den Kriechen michil nôt.
of-that is to-the Greeks great need.

nû vôre golt unde schaz,
now carry gold and treasure,

des ein michil mânkraft
of-which a great multitude

in dîner kameren
in thy chamber

is gelegit zô samene:
is laid to gathering:

des bistu, kuninc, rîche.
of-that art-thou, king, rich.

nû teilene vrumelîche,
now share-it valiantly,

mîn vil lieber hêrre,
my very dear lord,

dâ mide stênt dîn êre.
there with stands thy honor.

wir nemugen mit unsen sinnin
we may with our wits

nicht bezzeris râtis vinden.
not better counsel find.

nevolgis dû des nicht, Rôther,
(if)-follow thou it not, Rother,

sone kumistû nimmer uber mer“.
so comest-thou never over sea“.

Dô sprach der kuninc rîche
Then spoke the king rich

harte williclîche:
very willingly:

„ir habit vrumiclîche getân,
„you have valiantly done,

ich wil û gerne volgan.
I will you gladly follow.

swaz mir ie war, daz was û leit.
whatever to-me ever was, that was to-you sorrow.

diz ist ubergulde aller wârheit,
this is surpassing of-all truth,

daz ir mir nû sô vaste bestât,
that you to-me now so firmly stand-by,

nû is mir an die nôt gât.
now is to-me at the distress gone.

ich hân gewisse michelin schaz:
I have certainly great treasure:

nû môze er gewinnin gotis haz,
now must he win God's hatred,

der sîn immir icht gespare,
who of-it ever anything should-spare,

swilichin enden er gevare".
whichever ends he should-fare".

viere boten er dô sande
four messengers he then sent

vil wîtin inme lande
very widely in-the land

unde inbôt in al gelîche,
and sent-word to-them all alike,

dê dâ woldin werdin rîche,
who there would become rich,

daz sie zô hove quêmen,
that they to court should-come,

der dâ solde sîn zô Rôme,
which there should be at Rome,

da bedorfter er zô eime dinge,
there needed he for a thing,

daz nemochter nicht wol vullenbringen
that might-he not well accomplish

âne gôte knechte,
without good knights,

iz nequême ime unrechte.
it unless-should-come to-him wrongly.

einin brief er dô sante
a letter he then sent

zô eime unkundigin lande:
to an unknown land:

dâ was ein riese der hiez Aspriân,
there was a giant who was-called Asprian,

der nêmêr zô hove niquam.
who never-more to court came.

durch die starken numêre
for the hard tidings

hûb er sich zwâre
raised he himself truly

mit unkundiger diete
with unknown folk

vor den kuninc gôten.
before the king good.

der vôrte riesiniske man,
he led giantish men,

die trôgin stangin vrêssam.
they bore staves terrible.

Des kuningis nûmêre,
The king's tidings,

(daz sagech û zwâre)
(that tell-I you truly)

die irschullen harte wîde.
they resounded very widely.

die hêrren begunden rîden;
the lords began to-ride;

dâ vazzite sich man wider man,
there equipped himself man against man,

daz er schône zô hove quam.
that he fairly to court came.

durch daz iz ein hovesprâche was,
because that it a court-assembly was,

ir nechein iz nevirsaz.
of-them none it missed.

do gewan her michele heres kraft.
then won he great of-army strength.

sie ritin dicke scharehaft,
they rode often in-troops,

dô zwâ unde sibinzich krônen
when two and seventy crowns

vur den kuninc quâmen zô Rôme.
before the king came at Rome.

dô sân sie in deme melme gân
then saw they in the dust go

einin wunderlîchen man,
a wondrous man,

den nemochte nichein ros getragen,
him might no horse carry,

der dûchte sie ein seltsêne knape.
he seemed to-them a strange squire.

der trôch eine stâline stangin,
he bore a steel staff,

vier und zweinzich ellene lange.
four and twenty ells long.

des wart sie ein michil kaffen an getân,
of-that was them a great gaping on done,

sie brâchte ein riese, der hiez Aspriân.
them brought a giant, who was-called Asprian.

V · THE VOYAGE OF DIETRICH

Berchter of Meran admires the giants, but those who see them arm in fear until he parts them and says Asprian comes in friendship. Rother tells the lords he will go abroad under another name; Berchter refuses the regency, and Amelger of Tengelingen is given the crown. Rother takes twelve dukes, Asprian twelve giants, among them Widolt, kept chained like a lion. Laden with gold work, the fleet sails, and Rother bids all call him Dietrich. The giants brawl on the strand, the burghers flee, one runs to tell Constantine, and a counselor warns him that he has wronged the envoys.

Alsô Berther die riesen an gesach,
As Berchter the giants on looked,

nû mugit ir hôren wie her sprach:
now may you hear how he spoke:

„ich sie dûrt guote knechte,
„I see there good knights,

die turrin wol vechten.
who dare well fight.

uns kumit zô vôze ein schône schare,
to-us comes on foot a fair troop,

die sîn harte wîclîche gare.
who are very warlike ready.

mîn vil lieber hêrre,
my very dear lord,

untfâ sie nâch dînen êren.
receive them according-to thy honors.

si sint zô den brusten vil grôz.
they are at the breasts very great.

wâr gewan ie sicheinis kuningis gnôz
where won ever any king's peer

sô manigin wîchgaren man?
so many battle-ready men?

swâr sie einen zorn willen hân,
wherever they an anger will have,

sowilich in intwîchet vor der stangin
whichever-one from-them yields before the staff

unde her in mit deme swerte gelangit,
and he him with the sword reaches,

der nedorfte umbe daz sîn leben
he would-need for that his life

nimmir einin pfenninc gegeven.
never a penny give.

nû vôre, kuninc Rôther,
now lead, king Rother,

derre wîgande zwelfe ober mere,
of-these fighters twelve over sea,

sone dar uns nehein man
so dares us no man

mit sîme volke bestân,
with his folk withstand,

her nemôze virlêsin den leben.
he unless-must lose the life.

al sie in dê hof ungelegen,
although they in the court unsuited-be,

sie sîn doch sô wîchgare kumen
they are yet so battle-ready come

dir zô helfe unde zô vromen".
to-thee to help and to profit".

Die riesen in deme melme
The giants in the dust

trôgen liechte helme
wore bright helms

unde brunien snêwîze,
and byrnies snow-white,

gewroht mit allen vlîze,
wrought with all diligence,

die swert zô den stangen,
the swords with the staves,

dê geislen alsô lange:
the whips so long:

daz die riemin solden sîn,
what the thongs should be,

daz wârin ketenen îserîn,
that were chains of-iron,

grôze knopfe hîngen dar an.
great knobs hung there on.

michel wunder sie des nam,
great wonder them of-it took,

die sê heten gisên,
who them had seen,

waz en solde geschên.
what to-them should happen.

sie wâfenden sich mit grimme
they armed themselves with fury

in die liechtin ringe,
in the bright rings,

ir gebêre wârin vrumelîche getân.
their bearing were valiantly made.

do irsag iz der herzoge van Merân:
then saw it the duke of Meran:

vil luzzil er dô twalte,
very little he then lingered,

unze her daz volc irrante.
until he the folk parted.

her sprach: „wer hât irhaben diesin scal?
he spoke: „who has raised this clamor?

den verbêdich uber al“.
it forbid-I over all“.

Dô sprâchen die stormgierin:
Then spoke the battle-eager-ones:

„wir untforten gine hêrrin.
„we feared yonder lords.

den sule wer unsich nîdlîche werin
against-them shall we us fiercely defend

durch daz wir uns generen“.
so that we us save“.

dô sprach der alde herzoge:
then spoke the old duke:

„sie kumint dur gôt here zô hofe.
„they come for good hither to court.

iz ist der kuninc Aspriân
it is the king Asprian

unde bringit riesinische man“.
and brings giantish men“.

wol untfênc der kuninc rîche
well received the king rich

dê riesin al gelîche
the giants all alike

unde manigen vromen man,
and many-a valiant man,

der zô sîme hofe quam,
who to his court came,

unde sagete in allen sîne nôt,
and told to-them all his distress,

die dâr hette der helid gôt.
which there had the hero good.

her sprach: „nû virnimet, tûrin wîgande,
he spoke: „now hear, precious fighters,

ich môz ûzime lande
I must out-of-the land

in einis recken wîse varen
in a warrior's manner fare

unde wille mich anderis namen.
and will me otherwise call.

ich wêne, der kuninc Constantîn
I believe, the king Constantine

gehoubitit habe die boten mîn:
beheaded have the messengers mine:

des is nû jâr unde dach,
of-that is now year and day,

daz ich ir negeinen negesach".
that I of-them none saw".

Do begunden die hêrren dringen
Then began the lords to-press

vaste zô deme ringe
firmly to the ring

unde machitin eine schare vil breit.
and made a troop very broad.

dô zîrete sie wîsheit,
then adorned them wisdom,

unde reditin under in,
and spoke among them,

Berchter solde kuninc sîn,
Berchter should king be,

biz ir hêrre quême,
until their lord should-come,

wande her der krônen wole pflêge.
for he of-the crown well should-take-care.

dô sprach der herzoge:
then spoke the duke:

„ichne darf nicheinis gerichtis hie zô hove.
„I need no judgment here at court.

wande bevildir mir daz ûwer lant,
for (if)-entrust-you to-me the your land,

iz wirt beroubit unde virbrant,
it is plundered and burned,

virhert die marke,
ravaged the marches,

virwôstent [sie] vil starke.
lay-waste [they] very strongly.

von dû kiesit û einin anderin man,
from that choose to-you an other man,

ich wille nâch mînen sonen varin.
I will after my sons fare.

nû bitit Amelgêrin,
now ask Amelger,

die mach wole wesen hêrre“.
he may well be lord“.

deme bevâlen sie die krônin
to-him entrusted they the crown

unde daz gerichte zô Rôme
and the judgment at Rome

an eime vil schônin ringe.
in a very fair ring.

her was von Tengelingin.
he was of Tengelingen.

Der kuninc Rôther zô ime nam
The king Rother to himself took

zwelf herzogen lossam
twelve dukes lovely

unde herzogen iegelîch
and duke each

zwei hundert rîtâr êrlîch,
two hundred knights honorable,

sô sie aller schônist wâren kumen.
as they of-all fairest were come.

die vil tûrlîchin gumen
the very excellent men

under deme volcmagene,
among the host,

die hôben sich zô samene.
they raised themselves in company.

dô vôrte der kuninc Aspriân
then led the king Asprian

mit ime zwelf sîne man,
with him twelve his men,

dâ under hette her einin riesin vreissam,
there among had he a giant terrible,

des môste man grôze hôte hân.
of-whom must one great guard have.

der gienc gebunden alse ein lewe
he went bound like a lion

unde was der aller kûnisten eine,
and was of-the all boldest one,

der ie mûtirbarn gehiez.
who ever mother's-child was-called.

swenne man in von der kitenin geliez,
whenever one him from the chain let,

deme nitete nieman einin zorn,
to-him bore no-one an anger,

er nehette den lîb virlorn.
he unless-had the life lost.

der was verre gegangin
he was far gone

von der riesin lande
from the giants' land

durch degenhête willen.
for valor's sake.

mit drouwe unde mit minnen,
with threat and with love,

sô virwant in Aspriân,
so overcame him Asprian,

daz her wart sîn man.
that he became his man.

er was vrêslîche gemôt.
he was fearsomely minded.

Witolt hiez der helit gôt.
Widolt was-called the hero good.

Der kuninc hiez daz gedigene
The king bade the household

mit Emilgêre rîtin widere,
with Amelger ride back,

unde daz sie daz rîche
and that they the realm

bewarten vromelîche
should-guard valiantly

vor aller slachte ubelen mannin.
against all kinds-of evil men.

dô kârde der hêrre dannen
then turned the lord thence

ingegin der stat zô Bâre,
toward the city at Bari,

dâr die kiele wâren
where the keels were

sô wîtine gereitôt,
so widely made-ready,

dar inne der helit gôt
there in the hero good

over mere solde varen.
over sea should fare.

mit golde wâren sie geladen
with gold were they laden

unde mit grôzer zîrheit.
and with great finery.

samît unde pfellile breit,
samite and brocade broad,

den schaz man âne zale nam
the treasure one without count took

unde trôg in allez daz an
and carried in all that on

ûz des kuningis kameren.
out-of the king's chamber.

sie vôrtin ûffe den wagenin
they carried upon the wagons

hinne zô den kielen
thither to the keels

maniger slachte gewîre.
of-many-a kind wire-work.

Der kuninc heiz ime gewinnen man,
The king bade for-himself win men,

die gôt gesmîde kunde slân
who good smith-work could hammer

schône ûzer golde,
fairly out-of gold,

alse iz dê rîtâr haben wolden.
as it the knights have would.

daz worter allez uber acht:
that wrought-he all above measure:

iz newir biz an den tûmistach
there will-be until on the doomsday

nimmer mê nichein man,
never more any man,

der suliche wunder moge begân.
who such wonders might perform.

Dô wâren des kuningis kiele
Then were the king's keels

gereitit vil schîre.
made-ready very swiftly.

sîne harfen her zô ime nam.
his harp he to himself took.

her heiz daz lût unde die riesin in gân. 805
he bade the people and the giants in go.

von deme stade sie scubin,
from the shore they pushed,

die sigilriemen sie zogin,
the sail-ropes they drew,

sie vôren zô Constînopole,
they fared to Constantinople,

der vil mêren burge,
the very famous castle,

uber dê sê vil breit. 810
over the sea very broad.

der kuninc gedâchte eine wîsheit.
the king thought-of a wisdom.

er sprach zô hêrren allen samint:
he spoke to lords all together:

„wir sulin in ein unkundegiz lant.
„we shall into an unknown land.

iz inist nichein kindis spil,
it is no child's play,

daz ich û nû sagin wil. 815
what I to-you now tell will.

wir môzen mit gôtin listin
we must with good arts

unser lîb gevirstin.
our life secure.

ich bitûch alle gelîche,
I bid-you all alike,

armen unde rîche,
poor and rich,

heizit mich Thîderîch.
call me Dietrich.

sone wêz nichein vremede man,
so knows no strange man,

wie mîn gewerph sî getân“.
how my business be made“.

des swôren sie ime eide,
of-that swore they to-him oaths,

die liezin sie ummeine.
which left they unforsworn.

sie gelobetin daz sie hietin Rôchtere Thîderîc,
they vowed that they should-call Rother Dietrich,

daz dâtin die hêrren hêrlîch.
that did the lords lordly.

Dô dê recken schôine
When the warriors fair

zô deme stade quâmen,
to the shore came,

dô liefin die burgêre
then ran the burghers

durch wunderis mêre
for of-wonder tidings

unde woldin ire zîrheit gesên hân.
and would their finery seen have.

do begundin die riesin sân
then began the giants at-once

zô vechtene an dem sande.
to fight on the sand.

sich hôb die vlucht dannen.
itself raised the flight thence.

ettilîcheme ward sô leide,
to-many-a-one became so sorrowful,

daz her des anderin nicht nebeide.
that he of-the other not waited.

dô quam einir harte hestelîche
then came one very hastily

vor den kuninc rîchen.
before the king rich.

her sprach: „owî, kuninc Constantîn,
he spoke: „alas, king Constantine,

wannen mac diz volc sîn?
whence may this folk be?

daz veret mit sô getâner kraft,
it fares with so made strength,

daz iz nêman gesagen nemach".
that it no-one tell can".

Alsus redete dô die kuningîn:
Thus spoke then the queen:

„wilich mach ire geverte sîn?"
„what-sort may their company be?"

dô sprach der burgâre:
then spoke the burgher:

„warumbe suldir mich des vrâgen?
„why should-you me of-that ask?

wande unser was ein michil teil,
for of-us was a great part,

dê nê zô rechte nebesâgen den kiel.
who never at right saw the keel.

wer vorten die vreislîchen diet,
we feared the terrible folk,

dâ newart schouwenis niet.
there was of-gazing none.

dâr ligit ein gebunden vor sîme zorne:
there lies one bound for his anger:

wir wêrin anderis die virlorne.
we would-be otherwise the lost-ones.

ich nekan ûch nicht mêr gesagen,
I can to-you not more tell,

war mite dê kiele sîn geladen,
what with the keels be laden,

wene mit îsirînen stangen,
except with iron staves,

grôzen unde langen.
great and long.

lach och anderis iecht dar ane,
should-lie also otherwise anything there on,

des nekan ich û niet gesagen“.
of-that can I to-you not tell“.

Sie hiezin den vreissamen man,
They bade the terrible man,

der dâ lac gebunden an,
who there lay bound on,

daz er an deme stade wêre
that he on the shore should-be

unde her des gôdes plêge.
and he of-the goods should-take-care.

wol gezierôt was ir lîph,
well adorned was their person,

sie trôgen alle bonît hêrlîch.
they wore all bonnets lordly.

sie ritin snêwîze mûle,
they rode snow-white mules,

dê wâren dâ zô Krieken tûre;
which were there in Greece precious;

manich appelgrâ march,
many-an apple-gray steed,

beide schône unde starch,
both fair and strong,

die giengen in an den henden.
they went to-them at the hands.

den wâren dê manen bewunden
to-them were the manes wound

mit borten alsô kleine,
with braids so fine,

dâ inne was gôt gesteine.
there in was good gems.

sowar die hêrren hinin rietin,
wherever the lords thither rode,

dê riesin liefen alliz mite
the giants ran all-the-while with

in ere wîchgewête.
in their battle-gear.

Dâr saz in manigen rêtin
There sat in many counsels

der kuninc Constantîn,
the king Constantine,

wie dê hêrren mochten sîn.
what the lords might be.

dô sprach sîner râtgeven ein:
then spoke of-his counselors one:

„hêrre, dir ist uvele gescheit
„lord, to-thee is evilly happened

an den boten wal getân,
at the messengers well done,

die dû hâst gevangin lân.
whom thou hast captured let.

unde sîn diz ir hêrren,
and (if)-are these their lords,

sie môigint unsich alle sêre.
they trouble us all sorely.

des intgeldet ettelîcher man,
for-it pays many-a man,

der is nie scult negewan.
who of-it never guilt won.

die dâ mit den stangen
who there with the staves

kumen sint sô langen,
come are so long,

den nemach nehein man widirstân.
them may no man withstand.

dû hâst den vâlant getân".
thou hast the devil done".

VI · THE EXILE RECEIVED

At an Easter court Dietrich kneels before Constantine, says that Rother has banished him, and offers his service, while Asprian sinks into the floor to his shins and two counts cannot lift his staff. Constantine fears the strangers and takes them in, boasting that he holds Rother's envoys. Asprian takes up his shield in anger, and Constantine excuses himself as drunk. Dietrich's men lodge by the gate with twelve wagons of treasure, one giant strikes fire from stones, and the queen rebukes her husband.

Dô quan iz an einin ôstertac,
Then came it on an Easter-day,

daz Constantin mit scalle was
that Constantine with clamor was

an deme Poderamis hove
at the Poderamus court

mit grâvin unde mit herzogin
with counts and with dukes

unde mit vrîgin hêrren,
and with free lords,

dê hette er durch sîn êre
whom had he for his honor

heim zô sîme hûs geladit:
home to his house invited:

die wurden mit swête gebadit,
they were with sweat bathed,

den sie von vrochten haveten,
which they from fears had,

wande die riesin gebârtin alsô sie doveten.
for the giants behaved as-if they raved.

Dô Thiederîch unde sîne man
When Dietrich and his men

vor den kuninc quam gegân,
before the king came walking,

eme ward ein schône dênest getân.
to-him was a fair service done.

intgegin ine gîngen dê herzogen lossam,
toward them went the dukes lovely,

unde die gôte kuningîn,
and the good queen,

sie hiez sie willekume sîn,
she bade them welcome be,

sie neic in allen gelîche
she bowed to-them all alike

unde intfênc sie gezoginlîche.
and received them courteously.

dô solden zwêne grâvin
then should two counts

Aspriânes stangin intfâhin:
Asprian's staff receive:

dâ was sô vil stâlis zô geslagin,
there was so much of-steel on struck,

sie nemochtin sie hebe noch getragin.
they could-not it lift nor carry.

ân iren danc viel sie dar nieder,
without their will fell it there down,

sie liezin sie durch nôt ligen.
they let it of necessity lie.

Constantîn saz ûpfe sînin stôl.
Constantine sat upon his seat.

Thiederîch gezoginlîche stûnt
Dietrich courteously stood

vor ime an den knien.
before him on the knees.

her sprach: „kuninc, man sagete mer ie
he spoke: „king, one told to-me ever

von dir grôze vrumecheit.
of thee great valor.

leider nû ist mîn arbeid
alas now is my hardship

alsô grôz zô mîme schadin,
so great to my harm,

daz ich in dier nimmer nemochte gesagin.
that I it to-thee never could tell.

nû irkinne got an mir armen man,
now take-note God of me poor man,

wande mich hât in âchte getân
for me has into outlawry done

ein kuninc der heizet Rôther
a king who is-called Rother

unde sizzet westrit ober mer.
and sits westward over sea.

des gewalt ist sô getân,
whose might is so made,

ime nemach nieman widerstân.
him can no-one withstand.

dô her mir sîn rîche virbôt,
when he to-me his realm forbade,

dô môstich iz rûmen durch dê nôt.
then must-I it quit through the need.

do netrûwidich in negeineme lande
then trusted-I in no land

mînin lîph sô wol behalden,
my life so well preserve,

sô hîr zô deme hove dîn.
as here at the court thine.

mir is gesaget, daz dû gewaldich sîs.
to-me is told, that thou mighty art.

mîn dienist biede ich dich an:
my service offer I thee on:

nû nim iz, tuginthafter man.
now take it, virtuous man.

durch genâde quam ich here gevaren.
for grace came I hither faring.

dû salt dîne êre an mir bewarin.
thou shalt thy honor on me guard.

newiltû mich an dîn dienist nicht nemen,
(if)-wilt-thou me into thy service not take,

sô môz ich Rôthere den lîph gebin".
so must I to-Rother the life give".

Al dê wîle Rôther den kuninc bat,
All the while Rother the king begged,

Aspriân der riese trat
Asprian the giant trod

in dê erden biz an daz bein.
into the earth up to the leg.

Constantîn ward in ein
Constantine came to one-mind

mit den bidervisten mâgin
with the worthiest kinsmen

die an sînen hove wârin,
who at his court were,

wê her dê hêrren lossam
how he the lords lovely

mochte behalden.
might keep.

Er sprach: „der hêrre nemach vor Rôther nicht genesen,
He spoke: „the lord can before Rother not survive,

nû wolde er gerne mit mir wesen,
now would he gladly with me be,

her bûtit sich an dê gewalt mîn
he offers himself into the power mine

unde sagit mir ouch daz her nôtic sî.
and tells me also that he needy be.

waz wert iz umme den virtrivenen man?
what becomes it about the banished man?

mir is leit daz er ie here quam;
to-me is sorrow that he ever hither came;

unde die sîne holden
and the his followers

dunkint mich harte irbolgen.
seem to-me very angered.

die haben sô nôtliche site:
they have so terrible customs:

dâ stêt ein unde tredet,
there stands one and treads,

der gezême wole in der helle
he would-befit well in the hell

deme tûvile zô eime gesellen".
to-the devil for a comrade".

Dô reiten ime dê hêrren daz her ir alsô pflêge,
Then counseled him the lords that he of-them so should-take-care,

daz sie ez vûr gôt nêmen.
that they it for good should-take.

„wir newizzen umbe Rôthere nêt.
„we know about Rother nothing.

diz ist ein vreislîcher diet,
this is a terrible folk,

den sul wir grôzlîche geben,
to-them shall we greatly give,

daz sie uns lâzen daz leben“.
that they to-us leave the life“.

Constantîn sprach hêrlîche
Constantine spoke lordly

wider Thiederîche:
to Dietrich:

„mir râtin genôge mîne man,
„to-me counsel enough my men,

wir sûlin dich minniclîche unfân.
we shall thee lovingly receive.

ob siez aber widerredit habetin,
if they-it however gainsaid had,

wei ungerne ich en virsagete!
how unwillingly I to-him should-refuse!

deme ellenden,
to-the exile,

swilichen mir got gesendet,
whichever to-me God sends,

deme wirt gedienit, wizze Crist,
to-him is served, may-know Christ,

alsô her is wert ist.
as he of-it worthy is.

doch neachtich in zô nicheinen vrumen man,
yet esteemed-I him for no valiant man,

der dâ ie durch rîchtôm ûz quam
who there ever for riches out came

her zô Kriechen in did lant.
hither to Greece into this land.

tûre degen[e] vile balt,
precious thane very bold,

dîn geverde daz ist grôz,
thy company that is great,

dû bist ir aller obergnôz.
thou art of-them all over-peer.

nu gebût dir an dê gewalt mîn,
now command thee in the power mine,

du salt hie silve wirt sîn,
thou shalt here self host be,

wandiz mir zô danke is,
for-it to-me to thanks is,

daz dû mînis gôtis gerôchis.
that thou of-my goods carest.

wer wânden daz dû gertis
we should-believe that thou desiredst

einir magit wol getân,
a maid well made,

die ich mit vlîze irzogin hân,
whom I with diligence reared have,

sô têtich also Rôthere,
so would-do-I as to-Rother,

der dich virtreib ober mere:
who thee drove over sea:

den hân ich iedoch bedwungin,
him have I nevertheless subdued,

sîne boten sîn hier[e] gebunden
his messengers are here bound

in mîme kerkenêre,
in my dungeon,

her negesiet sie nimmer mêre.
he sees them never more.

dar under wâren zwêne man,
there among were two men,

daz sie ein keiser mochte hân
that them an emperor might have

gerne in sîner gewalt.
gladly in his power.

sie vuortin manigin helt balt“.
they led many-a hero bold“.

Alse Aspriân dise rede virnam,
As Asprian this speech perceived,

den scilt er vazzen began
the shield he to-seize began

unde vordirte sîn wîcgewête.
and demanded his battle-gear.

her sprach: „man bûtit uns hî unrechte,
he spoke: „one offers us here wrongly,

ir habit mînen hêrren zô swache gezalt.
you have my lord too poorly reckoned.

Rôther sante gôte knechte in diz lant,
Rother sent good knights into this land,

sower die heiz binden,
whoever them bade bind,

des mochte her noch lîchte untgelden.
for-that might he yet easily pay.

nû sî wir hî vor ûwen handen;
now are we here before your hands;

êr wir werdin gevangin,
before we become captured,

daz weiz der waldindiger got,
that knows the all-ruling God,

êr geligit ettelîcher tôd,
before lies many-a-one dead,

der aller tûrist wil sîn,
who of-all most-precious will be,

mir nezôbreche die stange mîn“.
to-me unless-breaks the staff mine“.

Snellîche her an den rinc trat.
Swiftly he into the ring stepped.

Constantîn zô ime sprach:
Constantine to him spoke:

„hêrre, ir zurnit âne nôt,
„lord, you rage without need,

wande ûch hî nêman missebôt.
for to-you here no-one offended.

die rede die ich hân getân,
the speech which I have done,

die sulder nicht zô nîde hân.
it shall-you not for spite have.

mich machten trunkin mîne man,
me made drunk my men,

daz ich hûte alse ên tôre gân,
that I today like a fool go,

von dû nekan ich nicheime gôten knechte
from that can I to-no good knight

geanwarten zô rechte.
answer at right.

mîn drouwe newart nie von sinne getân,
my threat was never from sense done,

des geloubit mer, hêrre Aspriân,
of-that believe me, lord Asprian,

wan diz mer noch in deme lîbe umbe gât
for this to-me yet in the body about goes

unde mich sô geweldigit hât,
and me so overpowered has,

daz ich widir ûweris hêrren man
that I toward your lord's men

negeine gôte rede nekan“.
no good speech can“.

Aspriânis zorn was irgân.
Asprian's anger was gone.

sich herbergetin Thiederîchis man
themselves lodged Dietrich's men

der porten alsô nâhe,
to-the gate so near,

daz sie sich wol undersâgen.
that they each-other well saw.

dô gîngen die kamerâre,
then went the chamberlains,

die mit Têthirîche dâ wâren,
who with Dietrich there were,

unde gewunnin zwelf wagine:
and won twelve wagons:

die gîngin sibin nacht geladene,
they went seven nights laden,

sie trôgin golt unde schaz
they carried gold and treasure

und allez daz in den kielen was,
and all that in the keels was,

ein vil michel macht des gôtis.
a very great power of-the goods.

dâ mite vôr ein der iz wol behôte,
there with fared one who it well guarded,

dene triven ses riesin vrêsam
him drove six giants terrible

unde heizen ene ungebêre hân,
and bade him unruliness have,

daz die burgêre
that the burghers

immer sageten mêre
ever should-tell more

von Dietherîches mannen.
of Dietrich's men.

dô strebete her an dê lannen,
then strove he at the chains,

zwêne steine her in dê hant nam,
two stones he into the hand took,

dê wrêf dier grimmiger man,
them rubbed the grim man,

daz dar ûz vôr dû vlamme.
that there out went the flame.

die Kriechen hôven sich danne,
the Greeks raised themselves thence,

doch volgete ume manich man,
yet followed him many-a man,

unze her vor Constantîne quam.
until he before Constantine came.

dô sprach ein grâve oberlût:
then spoke a count aloud:

„hîr veret des tûvelis brût.
„here fares the devil's bride.

mochtich die schande
might-I the disgrace

immer mêr gewandelen,
ever more amend,

sô mir daz heiliche liecht,
so-help me the holy light,

ichne gebeite sîn vor deme kuninge nicht".
I should-await him before the king not".

Alsô die kuninginne gesach
As the queen saw

dene dê dar gebunden lach,
him who there bound lay,

sie sprach: „sich nû, hêrre Constantîn,
she spoke: „see now, lord Constantine,

hî vôren sie den meister dîn
here lead they the master thine

in einer ketenen zwâren.
in a chain truly.

owî wê tump wer dô wâren,
alas how foolish we then were,

daz wer unse tochter virsageten Rôthere,
that we our daughter refused to-Rother,

der dise virtreif uber mere.
who these drove over sea.

iz negewêlt nicht grôzer wîsheit.
it showed not great wisdom.

got der môze geven leit
God he may give sorrow

dîneme ungemôte.
to-thy ill-temper.

owî, hêrre gôte,
alas, lord good,

nû mochtistû dise vân oder slân,
now mightst-thou these capture or slay,

ob wer mînen rât hedden getân.
if we my counsel had done.

ich wêne aber, sowes sie dich bêten,
I believe however, whatever they of-thee should-ask,

daz dû iz vor vorchtin têtes
that thou it for fear wouldst-do

mêr dan dur gôte.
more than for good.

owî, hetten sie nû mîn gemôte,
alas, had they now my spirit,

sô heizen sie in geben daz selve wîph,
so should-bid they them give that same woman,

dar umbe dû manegen man daz lîph
for which thou many-a man the life
hâst benumen unde brâcht in arbeid,
hast taken and brought into hardship,
sô wolde ich sien dîne kundicheit.
so would I see thy cleverness.
dise nesîn dir aver kumin nicht rechte:
these are to-thee however come not rightly:
sie vôren gôte knechte,
they lead good knights,
mich dunkit daz sie dîne meistere sîn.
to-me seems that they thy masters be.
dû torstis baz in daz ouge dîn
thou wouldst-dare better into the eye thine
gegrîfin mit thîner hant,
grasp with thy hand,
den dû zornetis wider dessen wîgant
than thou shouldst-rage against these fighters
immer mit eineme hâre.
ever by a hair.
hûde ne is dîn gebâre
today — is thy bearing
nicht kuninclîche getân:
not kingly made:
dû zuckis dich trunkenheit an".
thou drawest thee drunkenness on".

Dietrich's men come before Constantine richly dressed, and Constantine's courtiers complain that they serve a miser. When a lion snatches the bread, Asprian hurls it against the hall's wall, and a duke warns the household to let the giant be. The queen mocks Constantine and begs him to free the envoys; he refuses. Berchter tells Dietrich the queen favors them and urges him to help the city's needy exiles, and Dietrich takes leave to keep his own table at his lodgings, where he opens his gates to the knights barred from court.

Die recken stalletin ir ros
The warriors stabled their horses

unde geherbergetin ûffe dene hof.
and lodged upon the court.

in er mantelin sie sich bevêngin,
in their cloaks they themselves wrapped,

vor Constantîne sie giengen 1095
before Constantine they went

harde gezoginlîche
very courteously

mit eren hêrren Thiederîche.
with their lord Dietrich.

silbe trôgen sie die swert.
self bore they the swords.

under in nehette nigên werc
among them had no work

der unwizzende hoveman, 1100
the ignorant courtier,

noch nedorfte niergen zô in gân,
nor needed anywhere to them go,

wande sie vôren mit sô getânen statin,
for they fared with so made bearings,

daz den Dietherîchis gatin
that to-the Dietrich's comrades

nê neblûchte der tach.
never shied the day.

sîn holde der dâ gebunden lach,
his follower who there bound lay,

der hette sich gezîrôt,
he had himself adorned,

van ume schên daz golt rôt,
from him shone the gold red,

her trôch eine brunien guldîn,
he wore a byrnie golden,

die bezeichnôte den rîchetûm under en.
which signified the riches among them.

dar ober trôch der helit gôt
there over wore the hero good

einin stâlînen hôt,
a steel hat,

deme was die lîste
to-it was the border

gewracht mit allen vlîze,
wrought with all diligence,

gewierit vile kleine.
wired very finely.

dô trôch her an den beinen
then wore he on the legs

zwô hosen schônir ringe,
two hose of-fair rings,

die schouwetin die jungelinge.
them gazed-at the youths.

einen gôden wâphenroch trôch er an.
a good surcoat wore he on.

dô sprâchen Constantînis man:
then spoke Constantine's men:

„hûte gesie wer daz beste gewant,
„today see we the best clothing,

daz ie quam in diz lant.
that ever came into this land.

dise recken sîn alle rîche.
these warriors are all rich.

wer leven bôslîche,
we live wretchedly,

daz wir dienin eime zagin,
that we serve a coward,

der ime vil seldene grôzen schadin
who to-himself very seldom great harm

durch unsir siheinis willen tôt,
for of-us any's sake does,

wande ene erbarmet zô harde daz gôt".
for him pities too hard the goods".

Die umbehange man ûf hienc.
The hangings one up hung.

der kuninc Constantîn zô tische gienc
the king Constantine to table went

ûf ein schône palas.
upon a fair palace.

Constantîn dâ inne was
Constantine there in was

mit vile grôzime gedrange
with very great throng

von Dietherîchis mannin.
of Dietrich's men.

der was ein schône menige:
it was a fair company:

ein dûsint snellir helide
a thousand bold heroes

vôrte der virtrivene
led the banished-one

zô hove in daz gesidile.
to court into the seats.

die kamerêre quâmin,
the chamberlains came,

die des gôtis plâgin,
who of-the goods took-care,

unde satten Dietherîche
and seated Dietrich

harde vromiclîche;
very splendidly;

truzzâten ande schenken,
stewards and cupbearers,

die solden bedenken
they should consider

zucht mit grôzen êren:
breeding with great honors:

sie vorchten die geste sêre.
they feared the guests sorely.

Dô zôch man vor Constantînis disch einin lewen vreissam,
Then drew one before Constantine's table a lion terrible,

der newolde niemanne vor nicht hân.
who would to-no-one before nothing have.

her nam den knechten daz brôt,
he took from-the servants the bread,

her teten over deme disge grôze nôt.
he did over the table great distress.

Aspriân begreif ene mit der hant
Asprian seized him with the hand

unde warf ene an des sales want,
and threw him against the hall's wall,

daz her al zebrach.
that he all broke.

wê leide ime der kuninc dô sâz!
how sorrowful to-him the king then sat!

her negeregite doch nie dê vôte.
he stirred yet never the feet.

„got môze uns gebôzen“ 1155
„God may us rid“

sprâchen zwêne herzogen,
spoke two dukes,

„diser hêrren hîr zô hove“.
„of-these lords here at court“.

der eine rûmite den sal
the one cleared-out the hall

unde sagete iz deme ingesinde over al:
and told it to-the household over all:

„dâr hât der eine vâlant 1160
„there has the one devil

den lewin geworfen an die want,
the lion thrown against the wall,

durch daz her eme sîne spîse nam.
because that he from-him his food took.

ir sulit gewerlîche gân;
you shall warily go;

wilder mînis râdes volgen,
(if)-will-you my counsel follow,

ir vermîdet den unholden 1165
you avoid the fiend

unde lâzit ene mit gemache
and let him with ease

werven sîne sache.
pursue his business.

hôdit ûch alle ûffe daz leven,
guard you all upon the life,

daz ir ime sîn brôt nicht nenimen!
that you from-him his bread not take!

begrîfet her iemanne mit der hant,
(if)-seizes he anyone with the hand,

her werfit ine an des sales want“.
he throws him against the hall's wall“.

Die kuniginne sach gerne den zorn,
The queen saw gladly the anger,

daz der lewe was virloren.
that the lion was lost.

sie lachete Constantîne an:
she laughed Constantine at:

„nû warte“, sprach sie, „wie genir hoveman
„now look“, spoke she, „how yonder courtier

dîn vedirspil irzogen hât,
thy falconry reared has,

der dâ vor deme dische stât.
who there before the table stands.

ir kumet noch an die ride mîn:
you come yet to the speech mine:

jane hettes dû die tochter dîn
indeed wouldst-have thou the daughter thine

nicht vorloren an Rôthere,
not lost to Rother,

der diese vertreif over mere.
who these drove over sea.

owî, wie gerne ich noch riete,
alas, how gladly I yet should-counsel,

daz man die boten liete
that one the messengers let

rîtin hin zô lande
ride thither to land

unde vazzede sie mit gewande;
and equipped them with clothing;

sulicher slachte iz wêre,
of-such kind it were,

daz man en mochte given mit êren:
that one to-them might give with honors:

wê mochte iz bat bestadet sîn?
how might it better bestowed be?

nu gedenke, hêrre Constantîn,
now consider, lord Constantine,

daz sich dise nicht nemochten erweren:
that themselves these not could defend:

wê woldestû den dich vor Rôthere generen?
how wouldst-thou then thee before Rother save?

gedenkit her an sîne man,
(if)-thinks he on his men,

sô môz dîn lant in ouwe gân;
so must thy land into woe go;

wane givestu mir noch die haftin,
unless givest-thou to-me yet the prisoners,

die dâr ligint in unkrachten,
who there lie in weaknesses,

daz ich sie môze ûz nimen;
that I them may out take;

sie havent ein vil swâr liven".
they have a very heavy life".

Der kuninc, joch einer nôte,
The king, though of necessity,

sprach daz her diez nîne tête,
spoke that he it not-at-all should-do,

ir bete wêre al verloren:
their prayer were all lost:

sie môstin dolen sînen zorn,
they must endure his anger,

iz wêre ir leit oder lieb;
it were to-them sorrow or dear;

sie nequâmin von Kriechen nicht,
they came from Greece not,

sô lange sô er lebete ∗∗∗
as long as he lived (lacuna)

dô sprach aber die kuningîn:
then spoke again the queen:

„waz wunderis wiltû an in begân?
„what of-wonder wilt-thou on them perform?

ir vader hiez Adâm,
their father was-called Adam,

danne wir alle quâmin.
from-whom we all came.

dû soldes gotis schônin
thou shouldst of-God spare

an der vil armer diete,
on the very poor folk,

unde liezis sie ûz der nôte.
and let them out-of the distress.

nû sîn sî virswellit,
now are they swollen,

harte missevuorit.
very ill-treated.

owî des ir vil schônin lîbes!
alas for their very fair persons!

der mir armen wîbe
who to-me poor woman

einin sulichen helfêre
a such helper

wider den kuninc gêbe,
against the king should-give,

alsô die dâr ligit gebundin,
as he-who there lies bound,

sô môstin sie zô lande.
so must they to land.

dune rietis mir nicht so vaste mite
thou counseledst me not so firmly with

* * *
(lacuna)

êr iz der âne danc wêre,
before it to-thee without will were,

swî schêre er iz verbêre“.
however soon he it should-forgo“.

Bercher sprach zô deme [kuninc] hêrren sîn:
Berchter spoke to the [king] lord his:

„ich trôste mich an dê kuningîn.
„I trust myself in the queen.

iz kumit uns wole, daz Aspriân
it comes to-us well, that Asprian

deme lewen sô wê hât getân.
to-the lion so woe has done.

sie vrôit sich in ir gemôte.
she rejoices herself in her spirit.

die anderin nerôchtin,
the others cared-not,

ob wir also verre wêrin,
if we so far were,

daz sie unsich nimmir nigesêhin
that they us never should-see

hie in ir lande.
here in their land.

sie gênt sô rûnande
they go so whispering

beide ûz unde în,
both out and in,

wêne wir in iecht dancnême sîn.
as-if we to-them anything welcome be.

ir nechein newênit vor uns genesen.
of-them none believes before us to-survive.

nû sulen sie mit genâdin wesen:
now shall they with grace be:

irlâzent sie der sorgin
release them from-the cares

unde var zô den herebergin,
and fare to the lodgings,

daz die ellenden môzen genêzen
that the exiles may enjoy

des der dîn vater lieze;
what the thy father left;

der hie vil maniger umbe gât
who here very many-a-one about goes

unde habit vil grôzen unrât
and has very great want

von deme armôte.
from the poverty.

got durch sîne gôte
God for his goodness

der irgezze sie ir leides!
he make-forget them their sorrow!

jô mochtin sie heime
indeed might they at-home

wole wesen rîche.
well be rich.

sie lieben jâmerlîche;
they live pitifully;

daz irbarmit mich sêre.
that pities me sorely.

nû hilfen thur dîne êre.
now help-them for thy honor.

dû bist rîchir dan Constantîn,
thou art richer than Constantine,

war umme soldistû an sîner spîse sîn?
what for shouldst-thou at his food be?

iz newêre uns nicht mugelîch“.
it were to-us not possible“.

dô sprach der hêre Dietherîch:
then spoke the lord Dietrich:

„dû hâst einin stêdigen môt.
„thou hast a steadfast spirit.

daz der got geve gôt!
that to-thee God give good!

swanne ich ûz dîme râte gân,
whenever I out-of thy counsel go,

sone volgich nimer neheinen man“.
so follow-I never any man“.

Alsô man daz wazzer genam,
As one the water took,

Dietherîch vor den kuninc gienc stân.
Dietrich before the king went stand.

her sprach: „ich wolde gerne, Constantîn,
he spoke: „I would gladly, Constantine,

zô den herbergen sîn
at the lodgings be

mit mînent holden.
with my followers.

sie nemugin mer nicht gevolgen,
they may me not follow,

alsô ich hare zô hove gân.
when I hither to court go.

sô ist dâr vile manich man,
so is there very many-a man,

dâ wir al samen sîn.
where we all together are.

nû helfet mer, vrouwe kuningîn,
now help me, lady queen,

wande ich vôre eine helfelôse diet:
for I lead a helpless folk:

der vromigistin nevolget mir niet.
of-the most-valiant follows me none.

swaz sô ich der mochte haben,
whatever so I of-them might have,

die hât Rôther irslagen.
them has Rother slain.

her virtreich mich ûze deme lande mîn“.
he drove me out-of the land mine“.

dô sprach der kuninc Constantîn:
then spoke the king Constantine:

„wir virzîhent dîn ungerne.
„we forgo thee unwillingly.

nû vare zô dînen herbergen.
now fare to thy lodgings.

gerôchis dû iecht des ich hân,
(if)-carest thou anything of-what I have,

dat sal dir wesin underdân.
that shall to-thee be subject.

ich wille dich gerne miete
I will thee gladly reward

unde wille dir êre biete,
and will to-thee honor offer,

daz du dînin hoveman
that thou thy courtiers

zogelîche heizis hî zô tiske gân,
courteously bid here to table go,

wander irsrecket mir daz wîb,
for-he frightened for-me the woman,

die mir ist alsô der lîb.
who to-me is as the life.

mînen mannen nemag it nicht schade wesen,
to-my men can it not harm be,

die sint is dicke genesen.
they are of-it often survived.

in disime sale ist iz aber selden getân“.
in this hall is it however seldom done“.

dô sprach der riese Aspriân:
then spoke the giant Asprian:

„hêrre, iz tete mir michil nôt.
„lord, it did to-me great distress.

mer nam dîn berwelf mîn brôt“.
from-me took thy bear-whelp my bread“.

Dietherîch der hêrre
Dietrich the lord

vôr zô den herbergin
fared to the lodgings

unde gebârte vêrzên nacht,
and behaved fourteen nights,

alsô her wêre unstadehaft,
as-if he were unsettled,

alwante ime die ellenden
until to-him the exiles

got begunde senden:
God began to-send:

den wâren die porten ûf getân,
to-them were the gates up done,

sie liezen sie ûz unde în gân.
they let them out and in go.

selve her iz in wol gebôt,
self he it to-them well commanded,

her bôttin vlîzelîche ir nôt.
he offered-them diligently their need.

Berther unde Aspriân
Berchter and Asprian

unde andere Dietherîches man,
and other Dietrich's men,

wol entfêngen sie die armen
well received they the poor

ande lêzin sich ere nôt erbarmen.
and let themselves their distress pity.

dicke richte man den tisch:
often set one the table:

dâ was daz inbîz gewis
there was the meal certain

allen die des gerôchten,
to-all who of-it cared,

daz sie den helit gesôchtin.
that they the hero sought.

den bescheinete men grôze minne
to-them showed one great love

unde brâchte sie alles gôdes eninne.
and brought them of-all goods therein.

des was den ellenden nôt,
of-that was to-the exiles need,

wandez en nieman nebôt
for-it to-them no-one offered

ovir alle die stat.
over all the city.

ir zôch zô Dietherîche die kracht,
of-them drew to Dietrich the multitude,

die von degenheite
who from valor

gelidin hatten arbeite.
suffered had hardships.

sie nehatten die kleider noch die ros,
they had-not the clothes nor the horses,

darumbe verbôt man en Constantînis hof.
therefore forbade one to-them Constantine's court.

des livete vile manich rîche
for-that lived very many-a rich-one

harte jâmerlîche. 1320
very pitifully.

VIII · DIETRICH'S BOUNTY

At his lodgings Dietrich feeds the needy knights of the city, gives them horses, mail, and cloaks, and clothes the naked at Berchter's urging. The exiled count Arnold receives a thousand marks from Dietrich's treasure, a court from Berchter, and thirty knights from Asprian. The queen praises Dietrich and laments that her daughter was refused to Rother, and Constantine's own men flock to Dietrich's service. The princess longs to see him, and at Herlint's counsel asks her father for a Pentecost feast, which he proclaims on pain of the gallows.

Sich virstônt die nôtige diet,
Themselves perceived the needy folk,

dat sie dem rîchen wâren lieb,
that they to-the rich-one were dear,

der in Constantînis hove was.
who in Constantine's court was.

ir zôch dar hiene ein grôz heris kraft
of-them drew thither thence a great host's strength

zô Dietherîche. 1325
to Dietrich.

her gab en vrumelîche;
he gave to-them worthily;

her genôzte sich in,
he made-equal himself to-them,

her sazte sie inebin in
he set them beside him

unde hiez ir dê schenken
and bade of-them the cupbearers

hôtin mit deme tranke
take-care with the drink

unde gebôt den truchtsêtin,
and commanded the stewards,

daz sie ir niene virgêzin.
that they of-them not-at-all should-forget.

den vremedin gesten
to-the strange guests

war die aller beste[n]
was the of-all best

lîphnare vore getragen,
victuals before carried,

die man iergin mochte haven.
that one anywhere might have.

Alsô die hêrren geâzin,
As the lords had-eaten,

ir leides ein teil virgâzin,
of-their sorrow a part forgot,

swê dâr hâte rîtâris namen,
whoever there had knight's name,

die sundirte man dan
them set-apart one then

unde gach en gôte rosse
and gave to-them good horses

unde pellelîne rocke,
and brocade coats,

zô den rossin stâlîne ringe,
to the horses steel rings,

daz sie mit swerte nieman nekunde gewinnen.
that them with sword no-one could win.

dô trôch der riese Aspriân
then carried the giant Asprian

manigen mantil wol getân
many-a cloak well made

ûze der kamerin Dietherîchis
out-of the chamber Dietrich's

unde vazzite sie al gelîche.
and equipped them all alike.

die swert her en umb bant
the swords he to-them around bound

unde gab in die vanin an die hant.
and gave to-them the banners in the hand.

do begunden sie behurdîren
then began they to-joust

unde vrouweden sich vor lieve.
and rejoiced themselves for love.

des lovete man Dietherîche
for-that praised one Dietrich

dâr zô hove grôzlîche.
there at court greatly.

Dô quam ein hêrlîch schare,
Then came a lordly troop,

die hatte sich virsûmit gare,
which had itself delayed wholly,

daz sie so lange wâren.
that they so long were.

sie vrochtin daz man en icht gâve.
they feared that one to-them not-anything should-give.

Berker gienc sê umbe
Berchter went them about

allez schouwende,
all gazing,

wê ir gelâz wêre getân.
how their bearing were made.

dô saz dâr manich nakit man
then sat there many-a naked man

unde schametin sich vil sêre.
and were-ashamed themselves very sorely.

dô sprach Berker zô sîme hêrren:
then spoke Berchter to his lord:

„nû warte zô disin armen!
„now look at these poor-ones!

daz mochte got irbarmen,
that might God pity,

sie schament sich vor schanden.
they are-ashamed themselves for disgrace.

sie netragent nicht umbez lîph und in den handen.
they wear not about-the body and in the hands.

dû salt sie alle vazzen
thou shalt them all equip

unde reichte machen.
and rich make.

sie sint zô deme gurtele alsô smal,
they are at the girdle so slender,

en stât er lîph harde wal.
to-them stands their person very well.

sie vlîzen sich zû wâren
they busy themselves in truth

nâ rîterlîchen gebâre.
after knightly bearing.

die toginlîchen blicke
the virtuous glances

begân sie sô dicke,
perform they so often,

daz iz von ungeslachte
that it from base-birth

kumin nîne mochte.
come not-at-all might.

nesîn under in nicht edele man,
(if)-are among them not noble men,

sô heit mir mîn hôvet ave slân“. 1380
so bid me my head off strike“.

„ich volge dir gerne“, sprach Dietherîch.
„I follow thee gladly“, spoke Dietrich.

„sower sô genâde sôchit ane mich,
„whoever so grace seeks on me,

her vindit sie, ob iz got wil“.
he finds it, if it God wills“.

dâr wart des gôdis harde vil
there was of-the goods very much

den ellenden vor getragen. 1385
to-the exiles before carried.

sie intfêngen iz al an Cristis namen.
they received it all in Christ's name.

Done stûnd iz borlange,
Then-not stood it very-long,

êr Dietherich der manne
before Dietrich of-the men

ses dûsint gewan,
six thousand won,

die ime wâren underdân 1390
who to-him were subject

mit dieniste aller tagelîch:
with service of-all daily:

sîn ingesinde was hêrlîch.
his household was lordly.

Dô quam ein verorloget man
Then came an outlawed man

zô Constantînopele gegân,
to Constantinople walking,

ein grâve der hiez Arnolt. 1395
a count who was-called Arnold.

der vôrde ein nôdigiz volc,
he led a needy folk,

drê vrîge hêrren,
three free lords,

die hatten grôze êre
who had great honor

virloren in eren lande.
lost in their land.

die gîngen trôrande
they went mourning

vil blôlîche in der stat,
very bashfully in the city,

daz en nieman nicht negaf.
that to-them no-one anything gave.

dô sprach der beste koufman,
then spoke the best merchant,

der ie vêle gôt gewan:
who ever much goods won:

„ich sie an û hêrren wole,
„I see on you lords well,

er nesint der armôte nicht gewone.
you are of-the poverty not accustomed.

wildir nû drâte
(if)-will-you now quickly

volgin mîme râte,
follow my counsel,

sô gât vor Dietherîche:
so go before Dietrich:

her helfit û vrumelîche
he helps you valiantly

ûz der nôte
out-of the distress

unde gerôcht ir mînis gôtis,
and deign you of-my goods,

ich give û ein gewant,
I give to-you a clothing,

daz ir û so harde nicht neschamet,
that you you so hard not shame,

daz ir sô nachit sîn“.
that you so naked be“.

„nû lône der mîn drechtîn“,
„now reward thee my Lord“,

sprach Arnolt der grâve.
spoke Arnold the count.

„daz saldû wizzen zwâren,
„that shalt-thou know truly,

of mir Dietherîch genâde dôt,
if to-me Dietrich grace does,

ich vergelde der dîn gôt“.
I repay to-thee thy goods“.

Der ellende grâve
The exiled count

nam sîne mâge
took his kinsmen

unde vôr vore Dietherîche.
and fared before Dietrich.

der intfênc ene vrumelîche
he received him valiantly

mit gôdeme gebâre
with good bearing

unde vrâgete ene wie her wâre.
and asked him how he were.

dô sprach her trôrande:
then spoke he mourning:

„mich hânt mîne vîande
„me have my enemies

virtriven dur iren overmôt.
driven-out for their arrogance.

nû iz mir tûre daz gôt.
now is to-me dear the goods.

swê arm sô ich sî,
however poor so I be,

ich bin doch von mînin mâgen vrî
I am yet from my kinsmen free

unde hân durch genâde
and have for grace

her zô der gevrâgit“.
hither to thee asked“.

„die vindistû“, sprach Dietherîch.
„that findest-thou“, spoke Dietrich.

mit Berker besprach her sich,
with Berchter consulted he himself,

waz sie deme hêrren solden geven,
what they to-the lord should give,

daz her mit êren mochte nemen.
that he with honors might take.

alsus riet dô der alde man:
thus counseled then the old man:

„got hât vil wole zô dir getân
„God has very well to thee done

mit grôzeme gôte.
with great goods.

nû helf in ûzir der nôte
now help them out-of the distress

und wiltus mînen râd haven,
and (if)-wilt-thou my counsel have,

sô heiz den schaz her vore tragin.
so bid the treasure hither before carry.

hîr newirt der bôsheit nicht geplegen:
here is of-the meanness not practiced:

man sal en dûsint marc geven
one shall to-him thousand marks give

und itwaz geven mêre,
and something give more,

sô helfit iz ouch den hêrren,
so helps it also the lords,

daz her den besten hof gewinne,
that he the best court should-win,

den man in der stat vinde“.
that one in the city should-find“.

„in trouwen“, sprach Aspriân
„in truth“, spoke Asprian

„her sal ouch mînen hân,
„he shall also mine have,

dar inne wil ich ime, daz ist wâr,
there in will I for-him, that is true,

drîezich rittâre vazzen ein jâr“.
thirty knights equip a year“.

Dietherîche dûchte die rede gôt.
to-Dietrich seemed the speech good.

den mêren schaz man vor in trôch
the famous treasure one before him carried

inde gaf deme edelen manne.
and gave to-the noble man.

dô vôr her vrôlîche danne
then fared he joyfully thence

hinne vor Constantînin
thither before Constantine

unde sagete ime unde den sînen:
and told to-him and to-the his:

„diz hât mir Dietherich gegevin,
„this has to-me Dietrich given,

got lâze ene mit genâden lieven!“
God let him with graces live!“

dô sprach dê edile kuningîn:
then spoke the noble queen:

„weiz got her mach wol edile sîn.
„knows God he may well noble be.

hîr schînit Constantînis sin.
here shows Constantine's sense.

eiâ arme, wie ich nû virstôzin bin!
eia poor-me, how I now cast-out am!

daz mîn tochtir deme virsagit wart,
that my daughter to-him refused was,

der disen helit virtrieven hât!
who this hero driven-out has!

dirre tôd sô vrumichlîche.
this-one does so valiantly.

ich weiz wol, Rôther der ist rîche
I know well, Rother he is rich

unde mac wol gewalt hân".
and may well power have".

dô sprâchen Constantînis man:
then spoke Constantine's men:

„vrouwe, û ist der ride nôt.
„lady, to-you is of-the speech need.

der tûvil tô en den dôt,
the devil do to-them the death,

die iz ie irwantin,
who it ever averted,

wir wêren ûz deme lande
we would-be out-of the land

mit deme kuninc Rôthere.
with the king Rother.

der hette unsich widir over mere
he would-have us back over sea

gesant mit grôzen êren.
sent with great honors.

nû dunkit uns bezzer, hêrre,
now seems to-us better, lord,

nû des nicht nemach irgân,
now of-that not may go,

daz wer werden Dietherîchis man.
that we become Dietrich's men.

her gevet uns vromelîche
he gives to-us valiantly

unde machit uns alle rîche".
and makes us all rich".

Die ellende grâve
The exiled count

nam sîne mâge
took his kinsmen

unde vôr vur Dietherîche.
and fared before Dietrich.

her intfienc sie vrumichlîche
he received them valiantly

und sante in vor in dê stat.
and sent them ahead into the city.

Berker im einin hof gab,
Berchter to-him a court gave,

dar zô gab ime Aspriân
there to gave to-him Asprian

drîzic rîtâr lossam
thirty knights lovely

mit grôzime gôte.
with great goods.

dô wart vaste zô môte
then became firmly to spirit

des kuningis ingesinde,
the king's household,

sie newoldin nicht irwenden,
they would not turn-aside,

sie newurdin Dietherîches man.
they unless-became Dietrich's men.

dar begunden vrîge hêrren gân,
thither began free lords to-go,

dar nâcht die edilen grâven
there after the noble counts

unde alle die dâ wâren
and all who there were

in Constantînis hove
in Constantine's court

âne die rîken herzogen,
except the rich dukes,

die irlâzis daz liet:
whom spares the song:

sie netâdens ouch nicht.
they did-it also not.

swaz der anderen vrome was,
whatever of-the others worthy was,

die zugin hin mit heres kraft
they drew thither with host's strength

zô Dietherîche.
to Dietrich.

her gab en tagelîche
he gave to-them daily

mit golde deme rôtin
with gold the red

dê pellele ungescrôtin,
the brocades uncut,

dar zô mantele snêvare:
there to cloaks snow-colored:

dar nâch hôven sie sic dare.
there after raised they themselves thither.

dô môste die riese Aspriân
then must the giant Asprian

dicke zô der kameren gân,
often to the chamber go,

biz her sie gewerte,
until he them granted,

des sie an den hêrren gerten.
what they of the lord desired.

dô lovete men Dietherîche,
then praised one Dietrich,

die hêrren al gelîche.
the lords all alike.

dâr newas ouch nichein man,
there was also no man,

her nemochte mit êrin bestân,
he unless-might with honors stand,

ob sê virsant wâren,
if they sent were,

die sînen schaz nâmen.
who his treasure took.

Alsô die rîtâre wider quâmen
As the knights back came

mit den schônen gâven,
with the fair gifts,

dô hôb sich harde tougin
then raised itself very secretly

daz rûnin under den vrouwin,
the whispering among the ladies,

beide vrô unde spâde
both early and late

an der vrouwen kemenâten
in the ladies' chamber

von deme hêrren Dietherîche,
of the lord Dietrich,

her levete vromiclîche.
he lived valiantly.

„owî, wê sal ich“, sprach die kuningîn,
„alas, how shall I“, spoke the princess,

„irwerbe umbe den vater mîn,
„obtain from the father mine,

daz wer den selven hêrren
that we the same lord

gesien mit unsen êren?“
should-see with our honors?“

„ich neweiz in trouwen“, sprach Herlint;
„I know-not in truth“, spoke Herlint;

„dû bist einigiz daz kint,
„thou art only the child,

dînen vater alsô lieb:
to-thy father so dear:

nû bitte in einer hôcgezîte,
now ask him of-a festival,

daz der dene helit zô hûs neme,
that he the hero to house should-take,

zô wâren ich dir daz sagen,
in truth I to-thee that say,

sô mog wir in aller best gesên,
so may we him of-all best see,

iz nemac ouch nimmir baz geschên“.
it may also never better happen“.

die juncvrouwe[n] gîng[in] drâte
the young-lady went quickly

zô ir vater kemenâtin
to her father's chamber

unde sprach: „woldit er nû, vater mîn,
and spoke: „would you now, father mine,

dise pinkesten hîr heime sîn,
this Pentecost here at-home be,

daz dûchte mich ein êre getân,
that seemed to-me an honor done,

unde sameneten ûwere man,
and should-gather your men,

daz die recken sâgin,
that the warriors should-see,

ob ir iecht rîche wâren.
whether you anything rich were.

ich neweiz war zô der vurste sal,
I know-not what for the prince shall,

her ne hette ettewanne schal
he unless had sometimes clamor

mit vrouweden in deme hove sîn".
with joys in the court his".

dô sprach der kuninc Constantîn:
then spoke the king Constantine:

„wol dich, tochter, daz dû levis!
„well-for thee, daughter, that thou livest!

wê dû nâch den êren strevis
how thou after the honors strivest

unde rêtis ie daz beste!
and counselest ever the best!

ich wille haven geste,
I will have guests,

daz man immer sagete mêre,
that one ever should-tell more,

waz hie schalles wêre
what here of-clamor were

zô disen hôchgezîtin.
at these festivals.

mîn gewalt gêt sô wîde,
my power goes so widely,

virsizzit iz danne geman,
(if)-fails it then any-man,

der môz den lîph virloren hân“.
he must the life lost have“.

Widir zô kemenâtin gînc daz megetîn.
Back to chamber went the maiden.

dô sante der kuninc Constantîn
then sent the king Constantine

wîde sîne mêre
widely his tidings

unde gebôt den rîtârin
and commanded the knights

hin zô der wertschefte,
thither to the feasting,

die was gelovet mit krafte.
which was vowed with strength.

her hiez sie sichirlîche varen.
he bade them surely fare.

dô môstin sie alle dare:
then must they all thither:

swer sich iecht sazte dar widir,
whoever himself anything set there against,

deme gebôt man iz bî der widen,
to-him commanded one it by the withe,

daz her gerner dar gienge,
that he rather thither should-go,

dan man in hienge.
than one him should-hang.

done torstiz nieman irlân.
then dared-it no-one omit.

sich gesellete man wider man
himself joined man to man

zû sîme gelîchen
to his equal

unde vazziten sic vlîzelîche. 1580
and equipped themselves diligently.

dâr nehette nichên mantil namen,
there had no cloak name,

her newêre mit golde besclagen,
it unless-were with gold mounted,

unde mochte daz sô lîchte sîn getân,
and might that so lightly be done,

daz sîn nieman niheine war neman.
that of-it no-one any heed took.

die vorsten rîche 1585
the princes rich

hôven sich gelîche
raised themselves alike

hin zô deme Poderamus hove.
thither to the Poderamus court.

seszên herzogen
sixteen dukes

unde drîzic grâvin
and thirty counts

mit scalle sie dâ wâren 1590
with clamor they there were

unde nuzzin Constantînis gôt,
and enjoyed Constantine's goods,

sô man noch manichis hêrren tôt.
as one yet many-a lord's does.

The princes gather, and Asprian sets Dietrich's bench of elephant ivory. Duke Frederick's chamberlain demands the place, and Asprian strikes him dead. Widolt breaks his chains and lays about him with his staff until Asprian calms him, and Frederick himself is plucked by the hair. Widolt is bound again; the dukes, fearing him, let their complaint drop and beg Dietrich not to bring him to judgment, and the queen tells Constantine that Rother would have kept such shame from him.

Dô sie quâmin zô Constantînopole,
When they came to Constantinople,

der vil mêren burge,
the very famous castle,

die vrostin wâren dâr ober nacht,
the princes were there over night,

daz man ire dâ wole plaf.
that one of-them there well took-care.

der tac begunde ûf gân.
the day began up to-go.

iegelîch kamerâre nam
each chamberlain took

sîme hêrren eine stat,
for-his lord a place,

die man eme von hove gab.
which one to-him from court gave.

dô heizin sie Aspriâne
then bade they Asprian

daz gesidile vâhen
the seats take

deme hêrren Dietherîche:
to-the lord Dietrich:

dâr benketer vlîzelîche
there benched-he diligently

mit aldime gestôle,
with old seating,

daz verre was gevôrit
which far was brought

hie vor von ir lande:
here before from their land:

iz trôgen elphande
it carried elephants

wîle in den gebeine.
once in their bones.

dar inne lac gôt gesteine:
there in lay good gems:

swê dinster die nacht was,
however dark the night was,

sie lûchtin alsô der tac.
they shone like the day.

her sazte einen tisch hêrlîch,
he set a table lordly,

dar mochte der rîche Dietherîch
there might the rich Dietrich

âne laster zô gân.
without reproach to go.

dô was ein harte hêr man,
then was a very proud man,

ein herzoge, der hiez Friderîch,
a duke, who was-called Frederick,

des kamerâre virsûmede sich.
whose chamberlain delayed himself.

der hiez Aspriâne
he bade Asprian

sîne benke rucken nâhir
his benches move nearer

unde sagite ime zwâre,
and told to-him truly,

wie rîke sîn hêrre wâre:
how rich his lord were:

her wolde alsô tûre sîn
he would as precious be

sô der kuninc Constantîn.
as the king Constantine.

er sprach: „nû rûmit, grôze bulgân!
he spoke: „now clear-out, great bully!

wir sulin daz geginsidile hân".
we shall the opposite-seat have".

„in trouwen", sprach Aspriân,
„in truth", spoke Asprian,

„daz newirt nûwet gedân.
„that is not-at-all done.

von hove schôf man mir die stat,
from court assigned one to-me the place,

daz sie û nîman negaf.
that it to-you no-one gave.

irhevet ir wider mich socheinen zorn,
(if)-raise you against me any anger,

den mochter gerne hân virborn
that might-you gladly have forborne

biz zô eime anderen mâle,
until to an other time,

sô iz hie heimlîcher wâre,
when it here more-private were,

daz dûchte mich wîstûm getân.
that seemed to-me wisdom done.

nû kiesit einin anderen man
now choose an other man

unde lâzit mich mîn gestôle hân“.
and let me my seating have“.

Der kamerêre hêre,
The chamberlain proud,

der zornite sich sêre
he raged himself sorely

unde trôste sich zô hundert mannen,
and trusted himself to hundred men,

die mit ime wârin gegangin
who with him were gone

unde dûchtin tôrlîche getân,
and seemed foolishly done,

daz der riese Aspriân
that the giant Asprian

icht torste riden dâ widir.
anything dared speak there against.

her stêzt eme einin banc dar nider.
he pushed to-him a bench there down.

Aspriân der helit gôt
Asprian the hero good

die hant her ûf hôf
the hand he up raised

unde slôc ime einen ôrslac,
and struck him a box-on-the-ear,

daz eme der kopf al zôbrach.
that to-him the head all broke.

nâch den schilden giengin sîne man
for the shields went his men

unde woldin Aspriâne slân.
and would Asprian slay.

der herzoge Friderîch
the duke Frederick

selve wâphinter sich
self armed-he himself

unde rief sînen sellen.
and called his comrades.

dô hôf sich ein geschelle,
then raised itself an uproar,

daz Tiederîchis kamerêre
that Dietrich's chamberlain

dâ zô hove bestanden wêre
there at court attacked were

mit michilîcher kraft.
with great strength.

jenir der dâ gebunden lac,
yonder-one who there bound lay,

der begunde bremin alse ein bere,
he began to-roar like a bear,

die ketenin die zôbrach er gare
the chains them broke he wholly

unde begreif eine stâlîne stangin
and seized a steel staff

vier und zwênzic elle lange.
four and twenty ells long.

swaz ime des volkes widirstiez,
whatever to-him of-the folk withstood,

wie luzzel her des genesen liez!
how little he of-it survive let!

dô sprach ein riese die hiez Grimme:
then spoke a giant who was-called Grimme:

„iz wirt hie ubil inne.
„it becomes here evil within.

ich sie Widolde varen.
I see Widolt fare.

nu gedenket, hêrre Aspriân,
now consider, lord Asprian,

ûwir grôzer gôte!“
your great goodness!“

mit listigeme môte
with cunning spirit

vrâgiter dene grimmigin man,
asked-he the grim man,

waz eme daz lût hette getân,
what to-him the people had done,

daz her in sô vîant sî.
that he to-them so hostile be.

„mir wart gesegit, hêrre mîn“,
„to-me was told, lord mine“,

[dô] sprach Widolt, der helit gôt,
[then] spoke Widolt, the hero good,

„sie hetten dicht brâcht an grôze nôt.
„they had thee brought into great distress.

done wistich wê iz hette getân:
then-not knew-I how it had done:

ich wolde sie alle irslagen hân.
I would them all slain have.

wêre der danne zô iemanne zorn,
were to-thee then at anyone anger,

der môste den lîph haben virlorin“.
he must the life have lost“.

„in trouwen“, sprach Aspriân,
„in truth“, spoke Asprian,

„sie nehetten mer niecht getân
„they had to-me nothing done

wane êre unde gôtis.
except honor and goodness.

nû wîchit ûwers gemôtis
now yield of-your spirit

unde gebit die stangin diesim man“.
and give the staff to-this man“.

ein riese sie im ûz der hant nam.
a giant it from-him out-of the hand took.

Den herzogen hêren
The duke proud

rou sîn kemerêre.
rued his chamberlain.

daz volc al zô semene
the folk all to gathering

hôf sich dar zô gegine
raised itself there to against

unde wolden Aspriâne slân.
and would Asprian slay.

dô sprach Widolt der kône man:
then spoke Widolt the bold man:

„waz ist jeniz gedrenge?
„what is yonder throng?

owî mîner stangin!
alas for-my staff!

sie woldin dî schaden, hêrre,
they would to-thee harm, lord,

des ingelden sie hûte vil sêre:
for-that pay they today very sorely:

iz nesî daz ich irsterve,
it unless-be that I die,

in môz vile wê werden,
to-them must very woe become,

sie kumin vluchtic widir“.
they come fleeing back“.

mit der vûst slôc er einin dar nider
with the fist struck he one there down

unde begreif den herzogen gôt
and seized the duke good

unde krazzitime ave den stâlîn hôt.
and scratched-from-him off the steel hat.

mit deme hâre her in ûf want,
by the hair he him up wound,

do intfiel er eme in daz gedranch. 1705
then fell-from he him into the throng.

swâ her die anderen gevienc,
wherever he the others caught,

wie strôdicke iz ûf gienc!
how thick-as-straw it up went!

dâr wart gestôzen manic man,
there was pushed many-a man,

daz her unsanfte nider quam.
that he ungently down came.

nu neweiz ich wie ein spileman 1710
now know-not I how a minstrel

zô hove vor den kuninc quam
to court before the king came

unde sagite ime mêre,
and told to-him tidings,

daz dâr grôz vechte wêre.
that there great fighting were.

Constantîn vrâgete mêre,
Constantine asked tidings,

waz dar schalles wêre. 1715
what there of-clamor were.

her sprach: „daz weiz der heilige Crist,
he spoke: „that knows the holy Christ,

ich sage der alsiz ist.
I tell to-thee as-it is.

dâr gaf einer daz fôter
there gave one the fodder

mit der lengistin rôten,
with the longest rod,

die ich mit den ougin ie gesach,
which I with the eyes ever saw,

biz man sie ime ûze der hant brach:
until one it from-him out-of the hand broke:

dô wart her dancnême.
then became he thankful.

sie sîn ime alle gezême,
they are to-him all fitting,

armen unde rîche:
poor and rich:

her rôfit sie vreislîche.
he plucks them terribly.

mir is lieb, daz ich sô vrô inran,
to-me is dear, that I so quickly escaped,

doch warf her mich over vêr man,
yet threw he me over four men,

daz mîne vôze
that my feet

die erden niene berôrtin.
the earth not-at-all touched.

ich stônt ime ouch vor deme liechten:
I stood to-him also before the light:

her nebedorte mîn dâr zô niechte“.
he needed of-me there for nothing“.

Widol wart gevangin,
Widolt was captured,

gebundin an die lannin.
bound to the chains.

alser zô den herbergen quam,
as-he to the lodgings came,

wie drâte iegelîch man
how quickly each man

nâ deme anderen zôch!
after the other drew!

vor deme kuninge wart die klache grôz
before the king was the complaint great

over Dietherîchis kemerêre,
about Dietrich's chamberlain,

daz sie gerouft wêren.
that they plucked were.

„daz ist mer leit", sprach Constantîn,
„that is to-me sorrow", spoke Constantine,

„nû sagit iz deme hêrren sîn.
„now tell it to-the lord his.

wil her û riechtin, daz is mer lieb,
(if)-will he you right, that is to-me dear,

ichne underwindes mich niecht".
I undertake-it myself not".

Alsiz Dietherîch virnam,
As-it Dietrich perceived,

her hiez zô eme sîne man gân,
he bade to him his men go,

Widolden den kônen
Widolt the bold

ûffe den hof vrônen.
upon the court lordly.

„hât er iemanne icht getân.
„(if)-has he to-anyone anything done,

iz sal ime an den lîph gân
it shall to-him at the life go

zô ûwir aller gesichte".
in your all sight".

„wir irlâzin in des gerichtis",
„we release him from-the judgment",

sprach Friderîch der herzoge,
spoke Frederick the duke,

„ê der tûvil kume her zô hove,
„before the devil come hither to court,

swanner her quâme,
whenever-he hither should-come,

dâ wir in alle gesêchin“.
where we him all should-see“.

bî den henden sie sich bevîngen,
by the hands they each-other took,

vor den kuninc sê giengen.
before the king they went.

sie sprâchen: „neinâ hêrre Dietherîch,
they spoke: „no lord Dietrich,

nicht neladene vore dich.
not summon-him before thee.

her nehât uns sulechis nicht geschadit,
he has us such not harmed,

daz iz dir immer werde geklagit.
that it to-thee ever be complained.

nû dû helith virtriven bist,
now thou hero banished art,

man sal dich êren, wizze Crist,
one shall thee honor, may-know Christ,

hê in diseme rîche,
here in this realm,

daz stêt uns gevôchlîche“.
that stands to-us fittingly“.

dô dankete in der hêrre.
then thanked them the lord.

ettelîcher forte sêre,
many-a-one feared sorely,

her wurde des roufens gedagit
he were of-the plucking silenced

mit vil grôzin bûlslagen,
with very great bruise-blows,

ob der helit kône
if the hero bold

ûf den hof quême,
upon the court should-come,

dar umbe liezen sie die klage
there for left they the complaint

unde swîgitin lasteris unde schaden.
and kept-silent of-reproach and harm.

Die gerouftin mit deme hâre,
The plucked-ones by the hair,

die swîgitin is zwâre
they kept-silent of-it truly

swilche wîs sie mochtin.
in-whatever way they might.

der kuninc saz in riechte
the king sat in judgment

unde klagitiz der kuningîn:
and complained-it to-the queen:

„eiâ arme, wie ich nû gehônit bin
„eia poor-me, how I now shamed am

an den vremeden mâgin,
in the strange kinsmen,

die here geritin wâren
who hither ridden were

ûz anderen rîchen:
out-of other realms:

die sîn sô vreislîche
they are so terribly

beide gerouft unde geslagin,
both plucked and beaten,

daz siez immer mugen klagen.
that they-it ever may lament.

daz hât Dietherîchis man
that has Dietrich's man

umme ein gestôle getân.
about a seat done.

vluchtic quâmen sie wider.
fleeing came they back.

her stiez sie mit der vûst nidir,
he pushed them with the fist down,

daz sie in deme hore lâgen.
that they in the filth lay.

wane mochten sie umbe die schuzzen vrâgen?
why-not might they about the shots ask?

die mochten sie haven geschozzen,
them might they have shot,

sone hetten sie is nicht genozzen,
so had they of-it not enjoyed,

des woldich immer vrô sîn".
of-that would-I ever glad be".

„nû swîch", sprach die kuningîn,
„now be-silent", spoke the queen,

„unde lâze wir daz geschuzze.
„and leave we the shooting.

dîn rede ist unnuzze,
thy speech is useless,

hette der der sô nâ gesîn,
had he to-thee so near been,

daz dû ene rechte hettis gesên,
that thou him rightly hadst seen,

dir negehulfe des nichein boge,
thee would-help of-it no bow,

dune môstis sîn gevlogin
unless-thou muststbe flown

zô aller vurdrist after wege;
at of-all foremost on way;

unde wêre aber Rôthere gegeven
and were however to-Rother given

die unse tochter schône,
the our daughter fair,

sone troste dich nieman hônen, 1805
so dared thee no-one shame,

her hette dir ûze sîme lande
he had to-thee out-of his land

der tûrin wîgande
of-the precious fighters

gesendit, daz dich nieman
sent, that thee no-one

mit here torste bestân.
with host dared withstand.

von dû môz ich wole klagen. 1810
from that must I well lament.

nû dulde hônede unde schaden
now suffer shames and harms

hîr in dîme lande
here in thy land

von Dietherîchis manne!
from Dietrich's men!

The princess comes to table crowned, with a hundred maidens, and Dietrich's company enters in gold, a carbuncle shining on him, but the press of gazers keeps her from seeing him. At the feast's end he gives his cloak to a minstrel and his men follow suit. In her chamber the princess confesses her love, and Herlint goes to bring him; Dietrich refuses, saying he would lose Constantine's favor, and sends her his service.

Den zorn liez Constantîn bestân
The anger let Constantine stand

unde hiez nâ sîner tochter gân,
and bade after his daughter go,

daz die magit schône
that the maid fair

schîre zô dische quâme.
quickly to table should-come.

dar ane nesûmete sie nicht,
there in delayed she not,

ir was ûffe den hof lieb.
to-her was upon the court dear.

die vrouwe begonde vore gân.
the lady began before to-go.

hundert megede lossam,
hundred maidens lovely,

die volgedin ir zwâren,
they followed her truly,

alle valehêre.
all fair-and-noble.

manigin armbouc rôt
many-an arm-ring red

trôgin sie gewîrôt.
bore they wired.

uns sagit daz liet mêre,
to-us tells the song more,

wie sie gevazzit wêren:
how they equipped were:

daz aller vordirste wîph
the of-all foremost woman

die hette gezierit den lîph
she had adorned the person

mit einer krônen guldîn:
with a crown golden:

daz gebôt ir vater Constantîn.
that commanded her father Constantine.

die anderen megide alle samen
the other maidens all together

die trôgin rîtârlîch gewant
they wore knightly clothing

von grôzeme overmôte.
from great pride.

cyclât der gôte
ciclatoun the good

der was mit deme golde
it was with the gold

gestickit allen halven,
stitched all sides,

dar under zabil unde kelin.
there under sable and throat-fur.

sie môste manigir ane seen,
them must many-a-one on look,

ê die vrouwe schône
before the lady fair

hin zô diske quâme.
thither to table came.

Dô hôf sich daz gedrenge
Then raised itself the throng

von manigeme snellen manne
of many-a bold man

mit deme hêrren Dietherîche:
with the lord Dietrich:

die wâren wundirlîche
they were wondrously

gevazzit, alser vore gieng.
equipped, as-he before went.

ir nehôrtit ê noch sint
you heard-not before nor since

gesagin von bezzerme gewête
told of better garments

dan die recken hêtin;
than the warriors had;

ir himide wâren sîdîn,
their shirts were silken,

sie trôgin bônît guldîn,
they wore bonnets golden,

dâ inne gôt gesteine.
there in good gems.

ein[en] karbunkul schône
a carbuncle fair

ûffe Dietherîche stûnt,
upon Dietrich stood,

der virdructe manich gesmîde gôt,
it outshone many-a smith-work good,

daz wole gelovit wâre,
that well praised were,

ob man dit dar inne nich nesâge.
if one this there in not saw.

Wie mochtin ûffe der erden
How might upon the earth

die mantele immer werdin
the cloaks ever become

bezzer mit gevôge
better with fitness

dan die hêrren trôgen?
than the lords wore?

die inville wâren hermelîn,
the linings were ermine,

dar over gezogen cyclatîn;
there over drawn ciclatoun;

der in nâ bî was,
whoever to-them near by was,

den dûchtiz schône alsô ein gras.
to-him seemed-it fair as a grass.

alse die varwe virlasc,
when the color faded,

aller steine ubirglas
of-all gems' over-gleam

lûchte von der edelîcheite sîn.
shone from the nobility its.

wie mochte tûrirs icht sîn?
how might more-precious anything be?

dar zû smactiz sûze.
there to smelled-it sweet.

iz brâchtin blatvûze
it brought flat-feet

Aspriâne zô êren:
to-Asprian for honors:

her gaf iz sîme hêrren.
he gave it to-his lord.

von dû môstin sie al intsamt
from that must they all together

des hêrren Dietherîchis gewant
the lord Dietrich's clothing

schouwin, dê dâ wâren.
gaze-at, who there were.

von den kaffâren
from the gapers

virlôs die vrouwe ir hôchgizît,
lost the lady her festival,

daz sie niene besach des rîtâris lîph.
that she not-at-all saw the knight's person.

Die hôchgezît wâren alle
The festivals were all

drê tage volle.
three days full.

alsiz an den drieten tach quam,
as-it on the third day came,

die varunde diet begunde gân
the traveling folk began to-go

vor den Dietherîchis disch:
before the Dietrich's table:

her gaf in schône, wizze Crist.
he gave to-them fairly, may-know Christ.

den hals her neigôte,
the neck he bowed,

her gaf sînin mantil gôten
he gave his cloak good

eineme armen spilemanne:
to-a poor minstrel:

her was zô heile dar în gegangen.
he was to luck there in gone.

so tâten die anderen al intsamt,
so did the others all together,

dâr nebehêlt nieman sîn gewant.
there kept no-one his clothing.

die mit ime dâr wâren,
who with him there were,

sie nerôchtin zwâren,
they cared-not truly,

wie iz in ûz der hant nam:
how it from-them out-of the hand took:

ir mantele nequam nichên dan. 1895
of-their cloaks came none away.

Dô scheit sich die hôchgezît.
Then parted itself the festival.

aller mannelîch
of-all every-man

reit zô sînin selidin,
rode to his dwellings,

âne Dietherîches helede:
except Dietrich's heroes:

die vôren zô den herebergen 1900
they fared to the lodgings

unde môstin gevazzit werden.
and must equipped become.

vrumicheit hette her dâr begân.
valor had he there performed.

iz newart ouch nie nehein man,
there was also never any man,

die Dietherîche dorste bestân,
who Dietrich dared withstand,

die recken namen hette. 1905
who warriors' name had.

daz her sô vile getâte,
that he so much did,

von dû lobit in daz liet.
for that praises him the song.

sie nigenôztin sich alle dar zô nicht.
they made-equal themselves all there to not.

Die hôfzîch was irgangen.
The court-festival was ended.

dô lief man wider manne
then ran man to man

zô vrôner kemenâtin
to lordly chamber

unde sagite von der gewête,
and told of the garments,

die der recke Dietherîch
which the warrior Dietrich

hette gevazzit ane sich.
had fitted on himself.

alsô der eine inne was,
when the one in was,

der ander vor den turin was,
the other before the door was,

wante die magit sô vil virnam,
until the maid so much perceived,

daz sie den tuginthaftin man
that she the virtuous man

von aller slachte sinne
from all kinds-of sense

in iren herzen begunde minnen.
in her heart began to-love.

noch dan was sie ime vremide:
yet then was she to-him strange:

sint gewan sie mit deme helede
afterward won she with the hero

manige werltwunne,
many-a world-delight,

unde ouch trûbe dar under.
and also gloom there among.

In der kemenâtin wart iz stille. 1925
In the chamber became it still.

dô sprach die kuninginne:
then spoke the princess:

„owî, vrouwe Herlint,
„alas, lady Herlint,

wie grôz mîne sorge sint
how great my cares are

umme den hêrren Dietherîche.
about the lord Dietrich.

den hettich sichirlîche 1930
him would-have-I surely

vorholne gern gesên
secretly gladly seen

unde mochtiz mit gevôge geschên
and might-it with fitness happen

umbe den tuginthaftin man.
about the virtuous man.

vunf bouge lossam
five bracelets lovely

die mochte ein bote schîre 1935
them might a messenger quickly

umbe mich verdienen,
from me earn,

der den helit drâte
who the hero quickly

brâchte zô mîner kemenâten“.
should-bring to my chamber“.

„in trouwen“, sprach Herlint,
„in truth“, spoke Herlint,

„ich wille mich heven an den sint.
„I will myself raise on the way.

iz sî schade oder nesî,
it be harm or be-not,

ich gê zô den herbergen sîn.
I go to the lodgings his.

doch pflegit her sulicher zuchte,
yet practices he such breeding,

daz wir sîn wâren âne laster“.
that we of-him were without reproach“.

Herlint gienc drâte
Herlint went quickly

zô einir kemenâtin
to a chamber

unde nam die tûrlîchen wât,
and took the precious garment,

alsô manich vrouwe hât.
as many-a lady has.

dar în zierte sie den lîph.
there into adorned she the person.

dô gîng daz listigez wîph
then went the cunning woman

zô deme hêrren Dietherîche.
to the lord Dietrich.

her intfînc sie vromelîche.
he received her valiantly.

vil nâ sie zô ime saz,
very near she to him sat,

deme recken sie in daz ôre sprach:
to-the warrior she into the ear spoke:

„dir imbûtit holde minne
„to-thee sends kind love

mîn vrouwe die kuninginne
my lady the princess

unde ist der vruntschefte underdân,
and is to-the friendship subject,

dû salt hin zô ir gân.
thou shalt thither to her go.

dâr wil die magit zwâre
there will the maid truly

dich selve wol infân
thee self well receive

nicht wene durch dîn êre.
not except for thy honor.

aller trûwin, hêrre,
of-all faith, lord,

des machdû vil gewis sîn
of-that mayst-thou very certain be

an der juncvrouwen mîn“.
in the young-lady mine“.

Alsus ridede dô Dietherîch:
Thus spoke then Dietrich:

„vrouwe, dû sundigis dich
„lady, thou sinnest thyself

an mer ellenden manne.
on me exiled man.

ich bin ouch zô kemenâtin gegangen
I am also to chamber gone

hie vore, dô daz mochte sîn.
here before, when that might be.

war umme spozeder mîn?
what for mock-you me?

leider sô tôd man den armen ie.
alas so does one to-the poor ever.

ûwer vrouwe ingedâchte die rede nie.
your lady thought the speech never.

hie is sô vile herzogen
here are so many dukes

unde vorsten in deme hove,
and princes in the court,

daz ir mit einen anderen man
that you with an other man

ûwerin scheimf mochtin hân,
your sport might have,

des hettir minnir sunde.
of-that had-you less sin.

ir virdienit daz afgrunde,
you deserve the abyss,

daz er mich sô tôrecht woldit hân,
that you me so foolish would have,

ich nebin nê sô arm man,
I am never so poor man,

ine wâre doch zwâre
unless-I were yet truly

dâr heime ein rîcher grâve".
there at-home a rich count".

Herlint sprach deme hêrren zô
Herlint spoke to-the lord to

(sie kunde ire rede wale gedôn):
(she could her speech well do):

„neinâ, hêrre Dietherîch,
„no, lord Dietrich,

nicht nedenke des ane mich.
not think of-that on me.

ich nehân is weiz got nicht getân.
I have it knows God not done.

mich hiez mîn vrouwe here gân:
me bade my lady hither go:

sie nimit michil wunder,
she takes great wonder,

daz dû sô manige stunde
that thou so many hours

in desseme hove heves gewesen
in this court hast been

unde sie newoldis nie gesên.
and her wouldst never see.

daz ist doch seldene getân
that is yet seldom done

von eime sô statehaften man.
by a so substantial man.

nû wîzet mer der rede nicht:
now blame me of-the speech not:

der kuninginne wâre lieph,
to-the princess were dear,

swelich êre der geschê,
whatever honor to-thee should-happen,

swie dû sie nie nigesê.
however thou her never sawst.

woldistu aber dar gân,
wouldst-thou however thither go,

dune tâdis nicht ubelis dar anne“.
thou didst not of-evil there in“.

Dietherîch zô der vrouwin sprach
Dietrich to the lady spoke

(her wiste wole daz iz ir ernist was):
(he knew well that it to-her earnest was):

„hie ist der merkêre sô vile:
„here are of-the spies so many:

swer sîn êre behaldin wille,
whoever his honor keep will,

der sal gezogenlîche gân.
he shall courteously go.

jâ wênit der ellende man,
yea believes the exiled man,

daz her nimmer sô wole getô,
that he never so well should-do,

daz siez alle vûr gôt
that they-it all for good

nimen, die in deme hove sîn.
take, who in the court are.

nû sage der juncvrouwin dîn
now tell to-the young-lady thine

mîn dienist, ob sie is gerôchit.
my service, if she of-it cares.

ich nemach sie nicht gesôchen
I can her not visit

vor der missehelle.
for the discord.

ich vorte daz iz irschelle
I fear that it should-resound

uns beiden lasterlîche:
to-us both shamefully:

sô virbûtit mer daz rîche
so forbids to-me the realm

Constantîn der hêrre,
Constantine the lord,

sô môz ich immir mêre
so must I ever more

vluchtich sîn vor Rôthere
fleeing be before Rother

unde nemach mich niergin generen“.
and can myself nowhere save“.

Dietrich has two silver shoes and two gold ones cast and sends Herlint one of each, both for the same foot, with a cloak and twelve bracelets. The princess sends her back for the other, and Dietrich comes, though he fears the chamberlains. While Berchter and the giants stage games in the courtyard, he slips into her chamber and fits the shoe on her foot. She would take only Rother, whose envoys lie in her father's dungeon; when Dietrich offers to bring him, she guesses he is Rother's messenger, and he says her feet rest in Rother's lap.

Herlint wolde dannen gân.
Herlint would thence go.

der hêrre bat sie dâr bestân
the lord bade her there stay

unde heiz die goltsmide sîn
and bade the goldsmiths his

zwêne schô silverîn
two shoes silver

îlinde giezin —
hastily cast—

wie sie dô zouwin liezin! —
how they then hurrying let!—

unde zwêne von golde,
and two of gold,

alser sie geven wolde.
as-he them give would.

dô bat her Aspriân,
then bade he Asprian,

daz sie zô einime vôze quâmen,
that they to one foot should-come,

daz her die beide nême
that he the both should-take

unde der vrouwen gêve,
and to-the lady should-give,

unde ênin mantil vile gôt,
and a cloak very good,

zwelf bouge goltrôt:
twelve bracelets gold-red:

sô sal men einir kuninginne
so shall one of-a princess

ir botin minnin.
her messenger love.

dô spranch sie vrôlîche
then sprang she joyfully

von deme hêrren Dietherîche.
from the lord Dietrich.

Herlint quam drâte
Herlint came quickly

zô ir vrouwin kemenâten
to her lady's chamber

unde sagete ir von deme hêrren,
and told to-her of the lord,

her pflêge sînir êren
he would-take-care of-his honors

harte vlîzelîche.
very diligently.

„daz wizzin wêrlîche,
„that know truly,

ime sîn des kuninges hulde lieb.
to-him is the king's favor dear.

her nemach dich gesên nicht
he can thee see not

mit nicheinir slachte vôge.
with no kind-of fitness.

nû warte an dise schôhe,
now look at these shoes,

die gab mir der helit gôt
them gave me the hero good

unde tete mir lievis genôch,
and did to-me of-love enough,

unde einin mantil wol getân —
and a cloak well made—

wol mich daz ich ie dare quam! —
well-for me that I ever thither came!—

unde zwelf bouge die ich hân,
and twelve bracelets which I have,

die gaf mir der helit lossam.
them gave me the hero lovely.

iz nemochte ûffe der erdin
there could upon the earth

nie schônir rîtâr werden
never fairer knight be

dan Dietherich der degin.
than Dietrich the thane.

sô lâze[ne] mich got liebin,
so let me God live,

ich kaffedene undankis ane,
I gaped-him unwillingly at,

daz ich mich is imer mach schamen“.
that I me of-it ever may shame“.

„Iz schînit wole“, sprach die kuningîn,
„It appears well“, spoke the princess,

„daz ich nicht sêlich nebin,
„that I not blessed am,

nû her mîn nicht wil gesehen.
now he me not will see.

machdû mir die schô geven,
(if)-mayst-thou to-me the shoes give,

durch des hêrren hulde,
for the lord's favor,

die vullich dir mit golde“.
them fill-I for-thee with gold“.

schîre wart der kôf getân.
quickly was the bargain done.

sie zôch dene guldînen an
she drew the golden on

unde nam dene silverînen schôn.
and took the silver shoe.

der gînc an den selven vôz.
it went on the same foot.

„owî“, sprach die kuningîn,
„alas“, spoke the princess,

„wie wer nû gehônit sîn,
„how we now shamed be,

dô dieser schôen lossam
since with-this shoe lovely

ist missegrîfe getân.
is mistake done.

ich nebringen nimer an.
I bring-it never on.

in trouwen dû môst hine widir gân
in truth thou must thither back go

unde bitten Dietherîche
and ask Dietrich

harde gezogenlîche,
very courteously,

daz her dir den anderin schôn gebe
that he to-thee the other shoe should-give

unde mich selbe wille gesên,
and me himself will see,

och her in sîme kunne
if he in his kin

ie gôter slachte gewunne“.
ever of-good kind won“.

„Owî“, sprach Herlint,
„Alas“, spoke Herlint,

„wie gare die laster danne sint
„how wholly the reproaches then are

unser beider, vrouwe!
of-us both, lady!

nû wizzistaz in trouwin,
now knowest-thou-it in truth,

soldich immer schande hân,
should-I ever disgrace have,

ich môz abir widir gân“.
I must however back go“.

dô hôb die magit wol getân
then raised the maid well made

ir wât lossam
her garment lovely

vaste an dê knê;
firmly to the knee;

sie nigedâchte der zucht nie,
she thought of-the breeding never,

vrouwelîcher gange sie virgaz.
ladylike gait she forgot.

wie schîre sie ober den hof geloufin was
how quickly she over the court run was

zô deme hêrren Dietherîche!
to the lord Dietrich!

her infînc sie vromichlîche
he received her valiantly

in allen den gebêre,
in all the bearing,

alser sie nie gesêge.
as-if-he her never saw.

dô wiste der helit wole sân,
then knew the hero well at-once,

war umme sie dar wider quam.
what for she thither back came.

Herlint sprach zô deme hêren:
Herlint spoke to the lord:

„ich môz immer mêre
„I must ever more

in bodescheffe gân.
in embassy go.

der schôn ist missegrîfe getân.
with-the shoe is mistake done.

sie sîn der kuninginne
they are to-the princess

gegeven durch dînin willin.
given for thy sake.

noch solde wir den einin haven:
yet should we the one have:

des heiz dich mîn vrouwe manen,
of-that bade thee my lady remind,

daz dû ir den anderen schôn geven woldis
that thou to-her the other shoe give wouldst

unde sie gesêges selbe,
and her shouldst-see self,

ob dû undir dîme kunne
if thou among thy kin

ie gôt geslechte gewunnis“.
ever good lineage won“.

„Ich dâtiz gerne“, sprach Dietherich,
„I would-do-it gladly“, spoke Dietrich,

„wane die kamerêre die meldin mich“.
„except the chamberlains they betray me“.

„nein sie“, sprach Herlint,
„not they“, spoke Herlint,

„mit vrouweden sie in deme hove sint:
„with joys they in the court are:

die rîtâre schiezen den schaft,
the knights shoot the shaft,

dâr ist michil spilis kraft.
there is great of-play strength.

ich wil hin vore gân:
I will thither ahead go:

nû nim zwêne dîner man
now take two of-thy men

unde heve dich vil drâte
and raise thee very quickly

nâ mer zô der kemenâten.
after me to the chamber.

mit deme grôzen schalle
with the great clamor

virmissin sie dîn alle.
miss they thee all.

ich gescheffe ein gestille
I make a stillness

von der kuninginne“.
from the princess“.

Herlint wolde dannen gân.
Herlint would thence go.

dô sprach der listiger man:
then spoke the cunning man:

„nu beide des kamerêris:
„now wait-for the chamberlain:

ich wille nâ den schôn vrâgen“.
I will after the shoe ask“.

schîre quam Aspriân.
quickly came Asprian.

her sprach: „owî, waz hân ich der getân?
he spoke: „alas, what have I to-thee done?

die wege ich nicht irlîdin nemac.
the ways I not suffer can.

dû môwis mich allen disen tac
thou troublest me all this day

mit itenûwim mêre
with ever-new tidings

dan dû ie getâtis, hêrre.
than thou ever didst, lord.

ir was hie ein michel teil geslagen,
of-them was here a great part beaten,

die hân die knechte zotragin.
which have the servants carried-off.

ist ir dâr ich irvallen,
(if)-is of-them there I fallen,

ich bringe der sie alle“.
I bring to-thee them all“.

dô nam Aspriân
then took Asprian

dê anderen schôn lossam
the other shoe lovely

unde einin mantil vile gôt
and a cloak very good

unde zwelif armbôge rôt
and twelve arm-rings red

unde gab dê al der vrouwin,
and gave them all to-the lady,

dô gienc sie alsô tougin
then went she so secretly

vil harte vrôlîche
very hard joyfully

von deme hêrren Dietherîche
from the lord Dietrich

unde sagite ouch zwâren
and told also truly

ir vrouwen lieb mâre. 2150
to-her lady dear tidings.

Der megede wartin was grôzlîch.
The maiden's waiting was great.

sich beriet der hêrre Dietherich
himself counseled the lord Dietrich

mit Berkere, deme alden manne,
with Berchter, the old man,

wê iz mit gevôge mochte gân.
how it with fitness might go.

„vile wole", sprach der herzoge, 2155
„very well", spoke the duke,

„an deme Poderamus hove
„at the Poderamus court

sal ich machen grôzen schal:
shall I make great clamor:

dar zût daz lût ubir al,
there to-draws the people over all,

sone wardit dîn nichein man".
so watches thee no man".

her heiz die riesen ûz gân; 2160
he bade the giants out go;

selve bedacter sîn ros.
self covered-he his horse.

sich hôf der lût ûffe dene hof.
itself raised the people upon the court.

dô vôrte der alde jungelinc
then led the old youngster

dûsint rîtâr in den sint.
thousand knights onto the way.

Widolt mit der stangen
Widolt with the staff

vôr dâr scrickande
fared there leaping

in allen den gebêre,
in all the bearing,

alser heriz wâre.
as-if-he army were.

dâ ubirwarf sich Aspriân,
there flung-over himself Asprian,

der was der riesen spileman,
he was the giants' minstrel,

Grimme zwelif klâfter spranc,
Grimme twelve fathoms leapt,

sô dâtin die anderin al intsamt.
so did the others all together.

her greif einin ungevôgen stein,
he gripped a monstrous stone,

daz der merkêre nechein
that of-the spies none

Diederîche virnam,
Dietrich perceived,

dô sie begunden umbe gân.
when they began about to-go.

In deme venstere die junge kuninginne stunt.
In the window the young princess stood.

schîre quam der helit junc
quickly came the hero young

over hof gegangin.
over court walking.

dâ wart er wole infangen,
there was he well received,

mit zwên rîtârin êrlîch.
with two knights honorable.

dar gînc die recke Dietherîch,
thither went the warrior Dietrich,

dô wart die kemenâte ûf getân,
then was the chamber up done,

dar în gînc der helit wol getân.
there into went the hero well made.

den hiez die junge kuningîn
him bade the young princess

selve willekume sîn
self welcome be

unde sprach, swes her dâr gebête,
and spoke, whatever he there should-ask,

daz sie daz gerne dêten
that she that gladly should-do

nâ er beider êren.
according-to their both honors.

„ich hân dich gerne, hêrre,
„I have thee gladly, lord,

durch dîne vromicheit gesên,
for thy valor seen,

daz ne is durch anderis nicht geschên.
that — is for other not happened.

desse schôn lossam
these shoes lovely

die saltu mir zien an".
them shalt-thou to-me draw on".

„vile gerne", sprach Dietherîch,
„very gladly", spoke Dietrich,

„nû irs gerûchit an mich".
„now you-it deign on me".

der hêrre zô den vûzen gesaz,
the lord at the feet sat,

vil schône sîn gebêre was.
very fair his bearing was.

ûffe sîn bein sazte sie den vôz:
upon his leg set she the foot:

z newart nie vrouwe baz geschôt.
there was never lady better shod.

dô sprach der listiger man:
then spoke the cunning man:

„nû sage mer, vrouwe lossam,
„now tell me, lady lovely,

mêre ûffe die trûwe dîn,
more upon the faith thine,

alse dû cristin wolles sîn —
as thou Christian wilt be—

nû hât dîn gebetin manic man —
now has thee asked many-a man—

ob iz an dînin willin solde stân,
if it on thy will should stand,

wilich under in allen
which among them all

der beste gevalle“.
to-thee best should-please“.

„Daz sagic der“, sprach die vrouwe,
„That tell-I to-thee“, spoke the lady,

„vil ernistlîche in trouwen,
„very earnestly in truth,

hêrre, ûffe die sêle mîn,
lord, upon the soul mine,

alsich getoufet bin:
as-I baptized am:

der ûze allen landen
who out-of all lands

die tûrin wîgande
the precious fighters

zô ein ander hieze gân,
to one another should-bid go,

sone wart nie nichein man,
so was never any man,

der dîn genôz mochte sîn.
who thy peer might be.

daz nemich an dê trûwe mîn,
that take-I on the faith mine,

daz nie nichein môter gewan
that never any mother bore

ein barin alsô lossam,
a child so lovely,

daz iz mit zuchtin, Dietherîch,
that it with breeding, Dietrich,

mochte gesizzin ineben dich.
might sit beside thee.

von dû bistû der tuginde ein ûz genumen man.
from that art-thou of-the virtue an out taken man.

soldich aber die wele hân,
should-I however the choice have,

sô nemich einin helit gôt unde balt,
so would-take-I a hero good and bold,

des botin quâmin her in diz lant
whose messengers came hither into this land

unde ligin hie zwâre
and lie here truly

in mînis vater kerkenêre.
in my father's dungeon.

der ist geheizin Rôthere
he is called Rother

unde sizzet westert uber mere.
and sits westward over sea.

ich wil ouch immer magit gân,
I will also ever maid go,

mer newerde der helit lossam".
to-me unless-becomes the hero lovely".

Alsiz Diederîch virnam,
As-it Dietrich perceived,

dô sprach die listege man:
then spoke the cunning man:

„wiltû Rôthere minnen,
„wilt-thou Rother love,

den wil ich dir schîre bringin.
him will I to-thee quickly bring.

iz nelevet nichein werltman,
there lives no worldly-man,

der mer sô lêve hette getân.
who to-me so love had done.

des sal her noch geniezen.
of-that shall he yet enjoy.

bit in die hônede liezin,
ask them the shames let-be,

her bôzte mer dicke mîne nôt,
he amended to-me often my distress,

des lône ime noch got.
for-that reward him yet God.

wir nuzzen vrôlîche daz lant
we enjoyed joyfully the land

unde leveten vrôlîche samt.
and lived joyfully together.

her was mir ie genêdich unde gôt,
he was to-me ever gracious and good,

allên have mic nû virtriven der helit gôt“.
although has me now driven-out the hero good“.

„In trûwen“, sprach die junge kuningîn,
„In truth“, spoke the young princess,

„ich virstâ mich an der ride dîn,
„I understand me in the speech thine,

der ist Rôther alsô leib,
to-thee is Rother so dear,

her nehât dich virtriven nicht.
he has thee driven-out not.

swannen dû verist, helit balt,
whencesoever thou farest, hero bold,

dû bist ein bode her gesant.
thou art a messenger hither sent.

dî sint des kuningis hulde lieb.
to-thee is the king's favor dear.

nune virhel mich der rede nicht!
now conceal-from me the speech not!

swaz mir hûte wirt gesagit,
whatever to-me today is told,

daz ist imer wole virdagit
that is ever well kept-silent

biz an den jungistin tac".
until at the last day".

der hêrre zô der vrouwen sprach:
the lord to the lady spoke:

„nû lâzich alle mîne dinc
„now leave-I all my affairs

an godes genâde ande dîn.
in God's grace and thine.

jâ stênt dîne vôte
yea stand thy feet

in Rôtheris schôze".
in Rother's lap".

The princess pulls back her foot and asks for proof. Dietrich offers the envoys as witnesses, and she resolves to win them from her father. Feigning a dream that she must go alive into the abyss and live in exile, she wins his leave to bathe and clothe them for three days, if anyone will stand surety; the dukes refuse her, and Dietrich does so before the court. The envoys are brought out black and wasted, Lupold in a rag; Berchter, who wept at the noise of the dungeon, turns away at the sight of his sons, wringing his hands and not daring to weep, and Dietrich too holds back his tears. Erwin tells Lupold of the gray man who gazed at them, and they guess he is their father.

Die vrouwe harte irscricte,
The lady very was-frightened,

den vôz sie ûf zuchte
the foot she up jerked

unde sprach zô Dietherîche
and spoke to Dietrich

harde blôtliche:
very bashfully:

„nune wart ich nê sô ungezogin;
„now was I never so ill-bred;

mich hât mîn ubermôt bedrogen,
me has my arrogance deceived,

daz ic mîne vôze
that I my feet

sazte in dîne schôze.
set in thy lap.

ande bistû Rôther sô hêr.
and (if)-art-thou Rother so noble.

sone machtû, kuninc, nimir mêr
so mayst-thou, king, never more

bezzer tugint gewinnen.
better virtue win.

der ûz genumener dinge
of-the out taken things

hâstû von meisterschaf list.
hast-thou from mastery wisdom.

sowilchis kunnis dû aber bist,
of-whatever kin thou however art,

mîn herze was ellende.
my heart was exiled.

unde hette dich got nû her gesendet,
and had thee God now hither sent,

daz wêre mer innenclîche lieb.
that were to-me inwardly dear.

ich nemach is doch getrûwen niet,
I can it yet trust not,

dune scheinis mir die wârheit.
unless-thou showest to-me the truth.

unde wâriz dan al der werlde leit,
and were-it then all the world's sorrow,

sô rûmde ich sichirlîche
so would-quit I surely

mit samt der die rîche.
together with thee the realms.

sus ist iz aber immir ungetân.
thus is it however ever undone.

doch nelebet nichein man
yet lives no man

sô schône, den ich dâ vor nême,
so fair, whom I there before should-take,

ob dû der kuninc Rôthere wêrist".
if thou the king Rother wert".

Alsus redite dô Dietherich
Thus spoke then Dietrich

(sîn gemôte was harte listich):
(his spirit was very cunning):

„nune hân ich vrunde mêre
„now-not have I friends more

dan die armin hêrren
than the poor lords

in deme kerkenêre.
in the dungeon.

swâ mich die gesêhin,
where me they should-see,

dâr mochtis dich an en virstân,
there mightst-thou thee on them understand,

daz ich der wâr gesagit hân“.
that I to-thee true told have“.

„in trouwin“, sprach die kuningîn,
„in truth“, spoke the princess,

„dê irwerbich umbe den vatir mîn
„them obtain-I from the father mine

mit ettelîcheme sinne,
with some sense,

daz ich sie ûz gewinne.
that I them out should-win.

her negevet sie aber nicheinime man,
he gives them however to-no man,

her nemôze sie ûffe den lîph hân,
he unless-must them upon the life have,

daz er nichein intrinne,
that of-them none should-escape,

biz man sie abir wider bringe
until one them again back should-bring

in den kerkenêre,
into the dungeon,

dâr sie mit nôtin wâren“.
where they with distress were“.

Des antwarte dô Dietherîch:
Of-that answered then Dietrich:

„ich wil sie nemen ubir mich
„I will them take over me

vor Constantîne deme rîchen,
before Constantine the rich,

morgin sichirlîche
tomorrow surely

sô sal ich her zô hove gân".
so shall I hither to court go".

die vrouwe alsô lossam
the lady so lovely

kuste den hêrren.
kissed the lord.

dô schiet her danne mit êren
then parted he thence with honors

ûz van der kemenâtin
out of the chamber

zô den herbergen drâte.
to the lodgings quickly.

alsô daz Berker gesach,
as that Berchter saw,

wie schîre der rinc zelâzen was!
how quickly the ring dissolved was!

dô sagete der hêrre Dietherîch
then told the lord Dietrich

die mêre alsô wunniclîch
the tidings so delightful

deme tûrlîchen herzogen.
to-the excellent duke.

des begundin sie beide got loven.
for-that began they both God to-praise.

Die juncvrouwe lac uber nacht.
The young-lady lay over night.

wê grôz ire gedanke was!
how great her thought was!

alsiz zô deme tage quam,
as-it to the day came,

einin stab sie nam
a staff she took

unde slouf in ein swarziz gewête,
and slipped into a black garment,

alse sie sich gewîlôt hette,
as-if she herself veiled had,

einin palmen sie ober ir achslen nam,
a palm she over her shoulders took,

alse sie ûz deme lande wolde gân,
as-if she out-of the land would go,

unde hôb sich vil drâte
and raised herself very quickly

zô iris vater kemenâten
to her father's chamber

unde klopfete an daz turlîn.
and knocked at the little-door.

ûf dete dô Constantîn.
up opened then Constantine.

alsô hê die magit an gesach,
as he the maid on looked,

wie listichlîche sie zô ime sprach:
how cunningly she to him spoke:

„nû gebût mir, hêrre vatir mîn,
„now command me, lord father mine,

môter, er sult gesunt sîn.
mother, you shall sound be.

mir ist sô getroumôt,
to-me is so dreamed,

mer nesende der waldindiger got
to-me unless-send the all-ruling God

sînin botin underdân,
his messenger subject,

ich môz in abgrunde gân
I must into abyss go

mit levendigen lîphe,
with living body,

des nist nehein zwîvil.
of-that is no doubt.

is nemac mich nêman irwenden,
it can me no-one turn-aside,

ich newille daz elelende
I will the exile

bûwin immir mêre
dwell-in ever more

zô trôste mînir sêle“.
to comfort of-my soul“.

Trûrich sprach dô Constantîn:
Sorrowful spoke then Constantine:

„neinâ, lêve tochter mîn,
„no, dear daughter mine,

sage mir waz dû willis,
tell me what thou wilt,

jâ wegich der dir helle“.
yea weigh-I for-thee the hell“.

„vater, daz ist immir ungetân,
„father, that is ever undone,

mir newerden die botin lossam:
to-me unless-become the messengers lovely:

die wil ich vazzen unde baden,
them will I clothe and bathe,

daz sie genâde môzen haven
that they grace may have

an ir armin lîve
in their poor bodies

ettelîche wîle.
some while.

ich negerer nicht wane drîe tage,
I desire not except three days,

sô werden sie dî widir aber
so become they to-thee back again

zô deme kerkenêre“.
to the dungeon“.

Constantîn der mêre
Constantine the famous

sprach, dat her daz gerne dête,
spoke, that he that gladly should-do,

ab sie einin burgin hetten,
if they a surety had,

der sie ûffe den lîf torste nemen
who them upon the life dared take

unde sie ime widir mochte geven,
and them to-him back might give,

daz ir nichein intrunne.
that of-them none should-escape.

dô sprach die magit junge:
then spoke the maid young:

„ich bitis hûte sô manich man,
„I ask-it today so many-a man,

daz sie etelîcher môt bestân,
that them some-one must undertake,

des lîf ist alsô tuginthaft,
whose life is so virtuous,

deme dû sie mit êren geven macht“.
to-whom thou them with honors give mayst“.

dô sprach Constantîn:
then spoke Constantine:

„daz tôn ich gerne, tochter mîn“.
„that do I gladly, daughter mine“.

Der zît iz nâôte
Of-the time it neared

vil harde genôte,
very hard closely,

daz Constantîn zô tiske gienc.
that Constantine to table went.

Dietherîch des nicht neliez,
Dietrich that not omitted,

her quême mit sînin mannen
he should-come with his men

vor den kuninc gegangen.
before the king walking.

dô man daz wazzer nam,
when one the water took,

die juncvrouwe lossam
the young-lady lovely

gînc vor deme tiske umbe
went before the table around

heize weinunde,
hotly weeping,

ob sie iemanne sô lêve hette getân,
whether she to-anyone so dear had done,

der die botin lossam
who the messengers lovely

ûffe den lîf torste nemen.
upon the life dared take.

ir nechein torste sie des geweren:
of-them none dared her that grant:

herzogin die rîchin
dukes the rich

virzigint ir gelîche,
refused her alike,

biz sie zô den recken quam,
until she to the warriors came,

mit deme die rât was getân.
with whom the counsel was done.

dô sprach die migit êrlîch:
then spoke the maid honorable:

nu gedenke, helit Dietherîch,
now consider, hero Dietrich,

aller dînir gôte
of-all thy goodness

unde hilf mir ûz der nôte.
and help me out-of the distress.

nim die botin ûffe daz levent,
take the messengers upon the life,

die heizit der die kuninc geven.
them bids to-thee the king give.

irzagit sîn mînis vater man:
afraid are my father's men:

sie neturrin sie nicht bestân.
they dare them not undertake.

doch sol die edelecheit dîn
yet shall the nobility thine

mit samt mir geteilit sîn,
together with me shared be,

daz ich der genieze.
that I of-thee should-enjoy.

swê gerne dû daz liezis,
however gladly thou that shouldst-forgo,

dich nelâze[n] dîn tuginthafter môt!
thee let-not-down thy virtuous spirit!

dû salt mich geweren, helit gôt“.
thou shalt me grant, hero good“.

„gerne“, sprach Dietherîch,
„gladly“, spoke Dietrich,

„sint irs gerôchit ane mich.
„since you-it deign on me.

iz negât mir nicht wene an den lîph;
it goes to-me not except at the life;

doch werdich dîn burge, schône wîph“.
yet become-I thy surety, fair woman“.

Die botin gab dô Constantîn
The messengers gave then Constantine

Dietherîche ûffe den lîf sîn.
to-Dietrich upon the life his.

der hêrre sie dô obernam.
the lord them then took-over.

dô volgetin ime des kuningis man
then followed him the king's men

zô deme kerkenêre,
to the dungeon,

dâr sie mit nôtin wâren.
where they with distress were.

die ellenden haftin
the exiled prisoners

lâgin in unkreften
lay in weaknesses

unde leveden bermelîche.
and lived pitifully.

Berker der rîche
Berchter the rich

stûnt unde weinôte,
stood and wept,

dô her den schal gehôrte.
when he the noise heard.

den kerkenêre man ûf brach,
the dungeon one up broke,

dar în schein dô der tac.
there into shone then the day.

schîre quam in daz liecht,
quickly came to-them the light,

des newârin sie gewone niecht.
of-that were they accustomed not.

Erwîn was der êrste man,
Erwin was the first man,

der ûz deme kerkenêre quam.
who out-of the dungeon came.

alsen der vater an gesach,
when-him the father on looked,

wie grôz sîn herzerûwe was!
how great his heart-rue was!

her kârte sich hine umbe
he turned himself thither around

unde wranc sîne hende,
and wrung his hands,

her netorste nicht weinen
he dared not weep

unde nestûnt ime nie sô leide,
and stood to-him never so sorrowful,

sint in sîn môter getrôch.
since him his mother bore.

Erwîn der helit gôt
Erwin the hero good

was von deme lîphe getân
was of the body made

alsô von rechte ein arm man.
as by right a poor man.

Sie nâmin die zwelf grâvin
They took the twelve counts

ûz deme kerkenêre
out-of the dungeon

unde iegelîch sînen man.
and each his man.

die rîtâr alsô lossam,
the knights so lovely,

sie wârin swarz unde sale,
they were black and sallow,

von grôzen nôtin missevare.
from great distresses discolored.

Lûpolt der meister
Lupold the master

nemochte nicht geleisten
could not furnish

wan ein bôse schurzelîn,
except a wretched little-apron,

daz want her umme den lîph sîn.
that wound he about the body his.

dô was der weinige man
then was the wretched man

harte barlîche getân,
very barely made,

zoschundin unde zeswellit.
flayed and swollen.

Dietherîch der helit gôt
Dietrich the hero good

stûnt trôrich von leide
stood sorrowful for sorrow

unde newolde doch nicht weinen
and would yet not weep

umbe die botin lossam.
for the messengers lovely.

Berker der alde man
Berchter the old man

gînc al umbe
went all around

die haften schouwende:
the prisoners gazing:

done ruwen in nichein dinc
then rued him no thing

harter dan sîne schônen kint.
harder than his fair children.

Dietherîch der hêrre
Dietrich the lord

heiz die botin hêren
bade the messengers noble

vôren zô den herbergen sîn,
lead to the lodgings his,

wan Lûpolt unde Erwîn
except Lupold and Erwin

die liez man eine gân,
them let one alone go,

daz er neplaf nehein man.
that of-them took-care no man.

dô sprach Erwîn der mêre:
then spoke Erwin the famous:

„Lûpolt trût hêrre,
„Lupold dear lord,

sies dû einin grâwin man
sawest thou a gray man

mit deme schônin barte stân,
with the fair beard stand,

der mich schouwete
who me gazed-at

wunderen nôte?
of-wondrous distress?

her kârte sich umbe
he turned himself around

unde wranc sîne hande,
and wrung his hands,

her netorste nicht weinen
he dared not weep

unde nestûnt ime doch nie sô leide.
and stood to-him yet never so sorrowful.

waz ob got der gôte
what if God the good

durch sîne ôtmôte
for his humility

ein grôz zeichin wil begân,
a great sign will perform,

daz wir kumin hinnen?
that we come hence?

daz is wâr, brôdir mîn,
that is true, brother mine,

her mach wole unse vatir sîn".
he may well our father be".

dô lachetin sie beide
then laughed they both

von vrouweden unde leide.
from joys and sorrow.

The envoys are held until the next day. At the princess's asking they are fed at Dietrich's lodgings, with Berchter as steward to his own sons, while Dietrich plays a lay behind a hanging; Lupold and Erwin leap over the table to greet the harper, and the princess sees he is Rother. Let loose in the city, then seized again and returned to the dungeon, they live in comfort, supplied through a passage dug from Dietrich's lodgings. Then Ymelot of Babylon invades with seventy-two kings; Dietrich wins the prisoners' release, and Constantine marches out with fifty thousand. Camped before the host, Dietrich's men plan to seize Ymelot by night, and Asprian and twelve knights arm.

Die ellenden geste
The exiled guests

wârin hanfeste
were in-custody

biz an den anderen dach.
until to the other day.

die juncvrouwe eren vater bat,
the young-lady her father begged,

daz her sie lieze dare gân,
that he her should-let thither go,

sie wolden selve dienan.
she would self serve.

orlof er der kuninc gaf.
leave to-her the king gave.

wê schîre sie over hof getrach
how quickly she over court went

zô deme hêrren Dietherîche!
to the lord Dietrich!

dô hiez man al gelîche
then bade one all alike

die vremedin rîtâr ûz gân.
the strange knights out go.

dâr nebeleib nichein man
there remained no man

wan der verchmâge
except the life-kinsmen

die uber mere wârin gevarin.
who over sea were fared.

den botin also lossam
on-the messengers so lovely

den legete man gôt gewant an
them laid one good clothing on

unde vazzede sie vlîziclîche.
and equipped them diligently.

daz quam von Dietherîche.
that came from Dietrich.

der tisc wart gerichtôt.
the table was set.

Berker der helt gôt
Berchter the hero good

was trochtsâze
was steward

die wîle sîne kint âzin.
the while his children ate.

Alse die hêrren gesâzen,
As the lords had-sat,

ir leides ein teil virgâzen,
of-their sorrow a part forgot,

dô nam die recke Dietherîch
then took the warrior Dietrich

eine harfin, die was êrlîch,
a harp, which was honorable,

unde scleich hinder den ummehanc.
and slipped behind the hanging.

wie schîre ein leich dar ûz klanc!
how quickly a lay there out rang!

swilich ir begunde trinkin,
whichever of-them began to-drink,

deme begundiz nidir sinkin,
to-him began-it down to-sink,

daz er iz ûffe den tisc[e] gôz.
that he it upon the table poured.

swilich ir abir sneit daz brôt,
whichever of-them however cut the bread,

deme intfiel daz mezses durch nôt.
from-him fell the knife of necessity.

sie wurdin von trôste wizzelôs.
they became from comfort witless.

wie manich sîn trôren virlôs!
how many-a-one his mourning lost!

sie sâzin alle unde hôrtin
they sat all and listened

war daz spil hinnen kârte.
where the play thence turned.

lûde der eine leich klanc:
loud the one lay rang:

Lûppolt ober den tisch spranch
Lupold over the table sprang

unde der grâve Erwîn,
and the count Erwin,

sie heizin in willekume sîn,
they bade him welcome be,

den rîchen harfêre
the rich harper

und kustin en zwâren.
and kissed him truly.

wie rechte die vrouwe dô sach,
how rightly the lady then saw,

daz her der kuninc Rôther was!
that he the king Rother was!

Alse die juncvrouwe hinnin widir quam,
When the young-lady thence back came,

dô liez man die botin ûz gân
then let one the messengers out go

allenthalven in die stat,
everywhere in the city,

daz ir nêman neplach.
that of-them no-one took-care.

dô merketen iz des kuningis man
then noticed it the king's men

unde sagetin iz ir hêrren sân.
and told it to-their lord at-once.

„nû nerôchit", sprach Constantîn,
„now care-not", spoke Constantine,

„ich bevalch sie eme ûffe daz leven sîn.
„I entrusted them to-him upon the life his.

her pleget sô gôter sinne,
he practices so good wits,

ir nemach ime nichein intrinne".
of-them can from-him none escape".

der kerkenêre wart gerŭmôt,
the dungeon was cleared,

alse die juncvrouwe gebôt.
as the young-lady commanded.

dô drîe tage irgêngin,
when three days passed,

die botin sie aber viengen
the messengers they again caught

unde legetin sie zwâren
and laid them truly

widir in den kerkenêre.
back into the dungeon.

michil bettewâte
much bedding

unde ander gôt gerâte
and other good furnishing

wart in virholene dar în getragin,
was to-them secretly there into carried,

(dô môsten sie genâde haven)
(then must they grace have)

similen unde wîz brôt,
wheaten-bread and white bread,

des was den helidin vil nôt.
of-that was to-the heroes much need.

die juncvrouwe heiz ênin man
the young-lady bade a man

zô Dietherîchis herbergen gân,
to Dietrich's lodgings go,

der grôb ein hol zô berge
who dug a hole to upward

von deme kerkenêre,
from the dungeon,

swar sie woldin hinnin kêren.
wherever they would thence turn.

dô lâgin die haftin
then lay the prisoners

in sanftin unkreftin.
in soft weaknesses.

die botin lâgen dâr alle
the messengers lay there all

zwênzich tage vulle
twenty days full

unde haveten grôzen wirtschaf.
and had great feasting.

sie wunnen an dem lîve kraft.
they won in the body strength.

Dô hôb sich under deme himele
Then raised itself under the heaven

von zwein unde sibinzic kuningin
from two and seventy kings

von wôster Babilône
of desert Babylon

zô Constantîno deme kuninge
to Constantine the king

die aller gôrziste hervart
the of-all greatest war-journey

die iergin gewart.
that anywhere was.

Ymelôt gerte sîn zô man,
Ymelot desired him for man,

her was ein heidin vreissam,
he was a heathen terrible,

ime nemochte nicht widirstân,
him could nothing withstand,

her wolde die rîche alle hân
he would the realms all have

bedwungin mit grôzir gewalt.
subdued with great power.

uber al uncristin lant
over all un-Christian land

sone virsaz neiman sîn gebot.
so failed no-one his command.

her wolde selve wesen got.
he would self be God.

Simelîn heiz sîn wîb.
Simelin was-called his woman.

her virlôs zô Jêrusalêm sint den lîph.
he lost at Jerusalem afterward the life.

Dô quam ên îlinde man
Then came a hastening man

vor deme volke gevarin
before the folk faring

zô Constantînopole,
to Constantinople,

der vil mêren burge,
the very famous castle,

unde sagete deme kuninge mêre,
and told to-the king tidings,

wie nôt ime wêre,
how needful to-him were,

ob her sich mochte irweren,
whether he himself might defend,

in sôchte ein kreftigiz here.
him sought a mighty host.

alsus rededе dô Constantîn:
thus spoke then Constantine:

„wer mochte sô rîche sîn,
„who might so rich be,

der mich torste bestân“?
who me dared attack“?

dô sprach der gâhinder man:
then spoke the hastening man:

„dîn grôze overmôt
„thy great arrogance

der nis zô nichte gôt.
it is for nothing good.

in trouwen sie havent genendôt.
in truth they have dared.

iz is der hêrre Ymelôt
it is the lord Ymelot

von wôster Babilônie.
of desert Babylon.

zwêne unde sibinzic kuninge
two and seventy kings

die sôchen daz lant dîn.
they seek the land thine.

ich sach die vorreise sîn,
I saw the forward-march his,

sô manich zelt ûf geslagen:
so many-a tent up struck:

sie mugin wol zênzic dûsint haven“.
they may well hundred thousand have“.

Deme kuninge wurden swâre
To-the king became heavy

die starken nûmêre.
the hard tidings.

Dietherîch der helit gôt,
Dietrich the hero good,

der trôste wole sînin môt.
he comforted well his spirit.

her sprach: „halt dich wole, Constantîn,
he spoke: „hold thee well, Constantine,

unde gib mer ûffe den lîph mîn
and give to-me upon the life mine

die ellenden haftin
the exiled prisoners

ûz den unkreftin.
out-of the weaknesses.

hettin sie ros unde gewant,
had they horses and clothing,

under in is manich helit balt.
among them is many-a hero bold.

dar zô besende dîne man,
there to send-for thy men,

wer sulen ingegin in varen“.
we shall against them fare“.

„nû lône dir got“ sprach Constantîn,
„now reward thee God“ spoke Constantine,

„ich bevalch den kemerêre mîn
„I entrusted to-the chamberlain mine

beide ros unde gewant
both horses and clothing

daz sie brâchtin in diz lant.
that they brought into this land.

iz wirt in allez widir gegeven,
it is to-them all back given,

nû dû, tûrlîchir degin,
now thou, excellent thane,

mit mir wênigin man
with me few men

in derre nôte wilt bestân“.
in this distress wilt stand“.

Constantîn gienc drâte
Constantine went quickly

nâ Dietherîchis râte
after Dietrich's counsel

unde sante wîde in daz lant.
and sent widely into the land.

dô quam vil manich helt balt
then came very many-a hero bold

zô Constantînopole,
to Constantinople,

der vil mêren burge;
the very famous castle;

innirthalp drin tagin
within three days

dô mochter vunfzic dûsint haven.
then might-be fifty thousand have.

dô giengin îlande
then went hastening

die tûrin wîgande
the precious fighters

unde nâmen die zwelf grâvin
and took the twelve counts

ûz deme kerkenêre
out-of the dungeon

unde iegelîch sînen man.
and each his man.

wie schîre iz allez widir quam
how quickly it all back came

daz sie brâchtin in daz lant!
that they brought into the land!

Dietherîch der helit balt,
Dietrich the hero bold,

die nam sie zô sîner schare.
he took them into his troop.

dô wârin sie dâr hêrlîche gare
then were they there lordly ready

ûffe rossen snêblanken.
upon horses snow-white.

daz was deme helide wal zô danche.
that was to-the hero well to thanks.

Den heleden vil jungin
To-the heroes very young

giengen die ros in sprungin.
went the horses in leaps.

dô brâchte Dietherîchis vane
then brought Dietrich's banner

zwênzic dûsint lossam
twenty thousand lovely

in breiten blickin uber lant.
in broad flashings over land.

manigin gôtin wîgant
many-a good fighter

vôrte der kuninc Constantîn
led the king Constantine

ingegin die vîande sîn.
against the enemies his.

sie ritin wol sibin nacht
they rode well seven nights

ingegin der heris kraft.
against the host's strength.

die zwêne unde sibinzich kuninge
the two and seventy kings

von wôstir Babilônie
of desert Babylon

die ligetin sich alsô nâhe,
they lay themselves so near,

daz sie den rouch gesâgen
that they the smoke saw

von den herbergen.
from the lodgings.

dô hôben sich die sorgin.
then raised themselves the cares.

dô gaf in Dietherîch den trôst:
then gave to-them Dietrich the comfort:

her herbergete dô aller vurderôst
he lodged then of-all foremost

mit den sînin heleden
with the his heroes

inzusken der menegin.
between the hosts.

Schîre viel die nacht an.
Quickly fell the night on.

dâr bevâlen Constantînis man
there entrusted Constantine's men

einin anderen die kint unde wîph.
to-one other the children and women.

ir nichein trôste sich an den lîph.
of-them none trusted himself to the life.

Dietherîch unde sîne man
Dietrich and his men

begunden rûninde gân
began whispering to-go

unde rietin an die heidenschaf,
and counseled on the heathendom,

die dâr lach mit heris kraft;
which there lay with host's strength;

wilich êre in daz wêre,
what honor to-them that were,

ob sie den kuninc mêren
if they the king famous

âne Constantînis schadin
without Constantine's harm

gevâhin mochtin odir slân.
capture might or slay.

„introuwin" sprach Widolt,
„in-truth" spoke Widolt,

„kume wir in daz volc,
„(if)-come we into the folk,

sie sîn uncristine diet,
they are un-Christian folk,

ich newerdin borsenfte niet,
I become very-gentle not,

des sulin sie vil gewis sîn.
of-that shall they very certain be.

unde lâzet man mî die hende mîn,
and (if)-lets one to-me the hands mine,

iz môz en an den lîph gân“.
it must to-them at the life go“.

dô wâfende sich Aspriân,
then armed himself Asprian,

unde zwelf rîtâr lossam
and twelve knights lovely

sluffen in er wîcgewant.
slipped into their battle-gear.

in was zô deme storme harte lieb.
to-them was to the storm very dear.

dô schein ein halsperg liecht,
then shone a hauberk bright,

die trôch der helit Aspriân.
it wore the hero Asprian.

iz nelevet nichein sô kône man,
there lives no so bold man,

der ime widirstieze,
who him should-withstand,

daz hern ginesin lieze
that he-not survive should-let

under der heidinschefte.
among the heathendom.

sie hôbin sich mit krefte.
they raised themselves with strength.

By night Dietrich, Asprian, and Widolt steal into Ymelot's tent and take him captive, while the giants put his host to flight. Constantine's men accuse Dietrich of cowardice until Ymelot himself tells of his capture. Dietrich rides ahead as messenger, tells the queen that Constantine has fallen, and leads the women to the ships; he takes the princess aboard and leaves her mother on the shore, saying he is Rother. The queen blesses the match.

Der herzoge von Merân
The duke of Meran

heiz Dietherîchis man
bade Dietrich's men

vlîzelîchen wachen
diligently watch

unde grôzen schal machin.
and great clamor make.

her sprach: „mîn hêrre mit den sînin 2695
he spoke: „my lord with the his

wil zô Constantîne,
will to Constantine,

der hât nâ ime gesendôt".
who has after him sent".

dô was vil manic helit gôt
then was very many-a hero good

wol gewâfint an den wîch:
well armed for the battle:

iz newiste niemannis lîph, 2700
it knew no-one's person,

wan die verchmâge,
except the life-kinsmen,

die over mere wâren gevaren.
who over sea were fared.

Dietherîch gînc zô den rossen sîn.
Dietrich went to the horses his.

dô lûchte ein brunie guldîn
then shone a byrnie golden

an daz marc lossam.
on the steed lovely.

die trôc der zurnigiste man,
it wore the wrathfullest man,

der von Adâme
who from Adam

zô der werlde ie bequême,
to the world ever came,

unde eine stangin vreissam,
and a staff terrible,

dane mochte nicht vor bestân,
there might nothing before stand,

die trôste[n] Dietherîches volc:
which comforted Dietrich's folk:

daz was der helit Widolt.
that was the hero Widolt.

Lûppolt der getrûwe man
Lupold the faithful man

sprach zô den riesen al:
spoke to the giants all:

„ir in den halspergin liecht,
„you in the hauberks bright,

nune kumit ûz der dicke niet,
now come out-of the thicket not,

daz sie icht zô verre schînin".
that they not too far shine".

Dietherîch mit den sînin
Dietrich with the his

der reit umbe die heidenschaft,
he rode around the heathendom,

die lag mit heris kraf,
which lay with host's strength,

unde begonde vrâgen,
and began to-ask,

wâr sîn hêrre wâre;
where his lord were;

her hette sich virsûmôt,
he had himself delayed,

her brâchtime manigin helit gôt.
he brought-to-him many-a hero good.

dô zeigite man zô manne,
then pointed one from man-to-man,

unzer zô Ymelôte quam
until-he to Ymelot came

in ein zeilt lossam.
into a tent lovely.

daz swert zuchte Aspriân
the sword drew Asprian

unde hiez in vil stille stân,
and bade him very still stand,

ob her den lîph wolde hân.
if he the life would have.

der kuninc dô nicht nesprach,
the king then nothing spoke,

alser die stangin an gesach,
when-he the staff on looked,

die dûchtin harde vreissam:
which seemed-to-him very terrible:

gevangin was der rîke man.
captured was the rich man.

Dietherîch unde sîne man
Dietrich and his men

begundin deginlîche gân
began thane-like to-go

under eine dicke schare,
into a thick troop,

dâr valtin sie daz here gare.
there felled they the host wholly.

Widolt gab die stangin
Widolt gave the staff

nûwet ûz den handin:
not-at-all out-of the hands:

swaz her der heiden ane quam,
whatever he of-the heathens on came,

die slouc her alse ên donir sân;
them struck he like a thunder at-once;

swâr er zô der dicke quam,
wherever he to the thicket came,

dâr slouc her ûffe den man,
there struck he upon the men,

daz sie al zescreitin
that they all scattered

alsô ein stôp daz dô hine weite.
like a dust that then away blew.

Die zwelf riesen vreissam,
The twelve giants terrible,

die sclôgin manichen man.
they slew many-a man.

die heidin vlûn durch nôt,
the heathens fled of necessity,

sie jagete der grimme tôth.
them hunted the grim death.

Widolt wart gevangin,
Widolt was captured,

gebundin an die lannin.
bound to the chains.

Dietherîch der hêrre
Dietrich the lord

vôr zô den herbergin
fared to the lodgings

in allen den gebêren,
in all the bearings,

alsiz ime nicht geschên wêre.
as-if-it to-him not happened were.

Dietherîch heiz sîne man
Dietrich bade his men

zô den herbergen gân,
to the lodgings go,

swaz schalles sie vernêmen,
whatever of-clamor they should-perceive,

daz sie icht zô den rossen quâmen.
that they not to the horses should-come.

dô rief der wachtêre
then called the watchman

obir daz here mêre:
over the host tidings:

„wol ûf, hêrre Constantîn,
„well up, lord Constantine,

ich hôre die vîande dîn
I hear the enemies thine

mit grôzeme schalle:
with great clamor:

ich wêne sie here wollen".
I believe they hither will".

wê sêre sie irquâmen,
how sorely they were-frightened,

dô sie die vlucht virnâmen
when they the flight perceived

von der heidenschefte,
of the heathendom,

die dâr lâgin mit heres krefte!
which there lay with host's strength!

Constantîn wart gewafenôt
Constantine was armed

unde vil manich helit gôt.
and very many-a hero good.

dô sprachin sumilîche:
then spoke some:

„nû siet zô Dietherîche,
„now look to Dietrich,

her ligit dâr alse ein bôse zage,
he lies there like a wicked coward,

swie her uns here gewîsit hevet;
however he us hither directed has;

von den untrûwin sîn
by the faithlessness his

sît ir virrâtin, hêrre Constantîn".
are you betrayed, lord Constantine".

Constantîn dô rande,
Constantine then ran,

als ime daz marc irhancte
as to-him the steed hastened

vor ein gezelt êrlîch:
before a tent honorable:

„wol ûf, her Dietherîch!
„well up, lord Dietrich!

die heidin willin uns bestân.
the heathens will us attack.

hie nâchet der tôth manic manne".
here nears the death to-many-a man".

lûte rief Ymelôt:
loud called Ymelot:

„hêrre, ir spotit âne nôt.
„lord, you mock without need.

hînacht zô mittir nacht,
tonight at mid night,

dô ich in mîneme bette lac,
when I in my bed lay,

dô quam ein vreislîcher man
then came a terrible man

unde trouc mich under sînen arme dan.
and carried me under his arm away.

mir sîn die mîne gar irslagin,
to-me are the mine wholly slain,

sie nemugin dir nicht geschadin".
they can to-thee not harm".

Alse daz Constantîn virnam,
As that Constantine perceived,

dô kêrte her vrôlîche dan
then turned he joyfully away

unde sagite sinen mannen:
and told to-his men:

„Ymelôt is gevangin!
„Ymelot is captured!

daz hât Dietherîch getân.
that has Dietrich done.

nû môzin sie lasterlîche stân,
now must they shamefully stand,

die den hêrren âne nôt
who the lord without need

zô verre habin gevalscôt
too far have slandered

mit grôzeme unrechte".
with great wrong".

dô gîngin gôte knechte
then went good knights

zô deme hêrren Dietherîche
to the lord Dietrich

unde danketin ime grôzlîche.
and thanked him greatly.

daz march virleiz Constantîn,
the steed left Constantine,

ze vordirst her in daz gezelt gînc.
at foremost he into the tent went.

die hande nam her vor sich.
the hands took he before himself.

her sprach: „got lône der, hêrre Dietherîch,
he spoke: „God reward thee, lord Dietrich,

daz dû mit dînin mannin
that thou with thy men

den kuninc hâst gevangin.
the king hast captured.

eiâ tûrlîcher degin,
eia excellent thane,

wilich êre dir ist geschein!
what honor to-thee is happened!

hettich nû sigein gût,
had-I now any goods,

des dir immir wurde nôt,
of-which to-thee ever should-become need,

daz sal der wesen undirtân".
that shall to-thee be subject".

ir aller sorge was irgân.
of-them all care was gone.

Der tac begunde ûf gân,
The day began up to-go,

dô salite man manic man.
then saddled one many-a man.

Dietherich der wîgant
Dietrich the fighter

nam Ymelôtin bî der hant
took Ymelot by the hand

unde vôrtine vor Constantîne,
and led-him before Constantine,

her bevalch in ime unde sînin.
he entrusted him to-him and to-his.

dô sprach der listiger man:
then spoke the cunning man:

„wir soldin einin botin hân,
„we should a messenger have,

der den vrouwen sagete
who to-the ladies should-tell

waz wir gevromit hebetin".
what we accomplished had".

„introuwen", sprach Constantîn,
„in-truth", spoke Constantine,

„der bote saltû selve sîn
„the messenger shalt-thou self be

durch mîner tochter willen,
for my daughter's sake,

unde sage der kuninginne
and tell to-the queen

unde den vrouwin allin samt,
and to-the ladies all together,

wî rîtin in daz lant
we ride into the land

vil harte vrôlîche.
very hard joyfully.

dîn volc sumelîchiz
thy folk some

lâz mit mir hei bestân".
let with me here stay".

dô sprach der listige man,
then spoke the cunning man,

daz her gerne dête,
that he gladly should-do,

des in der kuninc bête.
what him the king should-ask.

Dietherîch gînc dannen
Dietrich went thence

mit sînin heimlîchen mannin
with his intimate men

unde sante daz volc zô des kuningis vanin,
and sent the folk to the king's banner,

her bat sie grôzen danc haven.
he bade them great thanks have.

zô ime nan her sîne man,
to himself took he his men,

swaz ir ober mere quam.
whoever of-them over sea came.

den kûnin her sagete
to-the bold-ones he told

wes her willin habete.
what he intent had.

die tûrin wîgande
the precious fighters

hugitin dô zô lande.
hoped then to land.

Dannin vôr dô Dietherîch.
Thence fared then Dietrich.

ein zeichin daz was hêrlîch
a sign that was lordly

brâchter zô Constantînopole,
brought-he to Constantinople,

der vil mêren burge.
the very famous castle.

mit den sînin mannin
with the his men

her sprach wêre intrunnin.
he spoke were escaped.

dô weinte dê vrouwe kuningîn:
then wept the lady queen:

„jariâ, wâ is Constantîn
„alas, where is Constantine

unde die wîgande
and the fighters

ûz von manigeme lande?
out from many-a land?

Dietherîch, lieber hêrre,
Dietrich, dear lord,

gesê wir sie immir mêre?“
see we them ever more?“

„nein ir, daz weiz got,
„not you, that knows God,

sie hât geslagin Ymelôt
them has slain Ymelot

unde rîtit dâ here mit heris kraft.
and rides there hither with host's strength.

her wil zevôrin die stat.
he will destroy the city.

ich netrûwe mich nicht irweren:
I trust myself not to-defend:

nû môz ich vliezin ober mere.
now must I flee over sea.

beide wîb unde kint,
both woman and child,

wâ sie in der burg it sint,
where they in the castle ever are,

sie kiesint alle den tôt.
they choose all the death.

sie irslêt der kuninc Ymelôt“.
them slays the king Ymelot“.

Dô nam daz Constantînis wîb
Then took the Constantine's woman

ir tochter die was hêrlîch
her daughter who was lordly

unde bâtin Dietherîche
and begged Dietrich

beide grôzlîche,
both greatly,

daz her in hulfe ûz der heidinschefte,
that he them should-help out-of the heathendom,

die dar quâmen mit heres krefte.
which thither came with host's strength.

dô heiz der listige man
then bade the cunning man

die zelder alsô lossam
the palfreys so lovely

der kuninginne dar zêhen
for-the queen thither draw

unde vôrte sie zô den kielen.
and led them to the keels.

dâr mugit ir geloubin
there may you believe

von manigir schônir vrouwen
of many-a fair lady

weinin unde hantslagin.
weeping and hand-wringing.

sie nemochtin nicht gedagin.
they could not be-silent.

er zôch ein michil maginkraft
there drew a great multitude

nâ Dietherîche ûz der stat.
after Dietrich out-of the city.

sie woldin alle ûffe den mere
they would all upon the sea

vor Ymelôte den lîph generen.
before Ymelot the life save.

dô trôste sie der karge man,
then comforted them the shrewd man,

her hetiz durch eine list getân.
he had-it for a ruse done.

Dietherîch heiz sîne man
Dietrich bade his men

vil drâte in kêl gân.
very quickly into keel go.

Aspriân, der helit gôt,
Asprian, the hero good,

den kamerschaz[man] dar în trôch.
the chamber-treasure [one] there into carried.

sie gêhetin alle ûffe daz mere.
they hastened all upon the sea.

dô heiz der kuninc Rôther
then bade the king Rother

die môter an deme stade stân,
the mother on the shore stand,

die tochter in den kiel gân.
the daughter into the keel go.

ir weinin was grôzlîch.
her weeping was great.

sie sprach: „owî hêrre Diederîch,
she spoke: „alas lord Dietrich,

weme wiltû, tuginthaftir man,
to-whom wilt-thou, virtuous man,

unsich armen wîph lân?“
us poor women leave?“

sus sprach die gôte kuningîn:
thus spoke the good queen:

„nû nim mich in den kiel dîn
„now take me into the keel thine

zô miner tochter lossam“.
with my daughter lovely“.

dô sprach die listige man:
then spoke the cunning man:

„vrouwe, ir solit ûch wol gehavin,
„lady, you shall you well bear,

Constantîn nis nicht geslagin.
Constantine is not slain.

Ymelôte hân wir gevangin,
Ymelot have we captured,

iz ist Constantîne wol irgangin.
it is to-Constantine well gone.

hê rîdit here zô lande
he rides hither to land

mit lieven êrande.
with dear errand.

her komit ovir drî tage.
he comes after three days.

ir mogit eme wêrlîche sagin,
you may to-him truly tell,

sîn tochter sî mit Rôthere
his daughter be with Rother

gevaren westene over mere.
fared westward over sea.

nû gebût mir, vrouwe hêrlîch!
now command me, lady lordly!

jone heizich niuwit Dietherîch“.
indeed am-called-I not-at-all Dietrich“.

„Wol mich“ sprach die kuningîn,
„Well-for me“ spoke the queen,

„daz ich ie gewan den lîf mîn.
„that I ever won the life mine.

nû lâze dich got der gôde
now let thee God the good

durch sîne ôtmôde
for his humility

die mîne tochter lossam
the my daughter lovely

lange mit gemachin hân.
long with ease have.

daz ist wâr, tûrlîcher degen,
that is true, excellent thane,

sie wêre der samfter gegevin,
she were to-thee more-gently given,

dan dû si hâst gewunnin,
than thou her hast won,

inde stundiz an mînin willin.
and should-stand-it at my will.

swie Constantîn nû den lîf
however Constantine now the life

quelede umbe daz schône wîf,
should-torment for the fair woman,

daz ist mir daz minnist,
that is to-me the least,

nû dû Rôther bist.
now thou Rother art.

nû vare, tûrlîcher degin,
now fare, excellent thane,

Sante Gilege môze dîn plegin“.
Saint Giles may of-thee take-care“.

dô sprach daz schône megetîn:
then spoke the fair maiden:

„gehavet ûch wole, môder mîn".
„bear you well, mother mine".

die vrouwen alsô lossam
the ladies so lovely

gîngin lachende danen
went laughing thence

ûf den Constantînis sal
upon the Constantine's hall

unde gunden Rôthere wol,
and granted to-Rother well,

daz in got gesande
that him God should-send

mit êren heim zô lande.
with honors home to land.

XV · THE MERCHANT'S SHIP

Rother returns with his bride, now with child, finds Amelger dead and the realm torn by six margraves, and rides toward Verona, where Wolfrat meets him with a host. Constantine comes home to learn the truth and swoons, and Ymelot escapes. A minstrel offers to win the princess back with a ship of wares and sixty knights in hiding. At Bari, while Rother is away, he sells his goods for a penny each and asks a thousand pounds for a pebble, which he says will raise the dead and heal the lame, and stakes his life on it.

Alse Rôther over mere quan,
As Rother over sea came,

dô wart die vrouwe lossam
then became the lady lovely

swanger einis kindis,
pregnant of-a child,

einis sêligin barnis.
of-a blessed child.

dô was Emelgêr dôt,
then was Amelger dead,

die lant alle verstôrôt
the lands all destroyed

van ses margrâvin,
by six margraves,

die woldin Hademâren
who would Hademar

zô eime koninge hân genomin unde gelovet:
for a king have taken and vowed:

dê was ein rîche herzoge,
he was a rich duke,

geboren von Diezen.
born of Diessen.

die Rôther gehiezen
who to-Rother promised

trouwen biz hê quême,
faith until he should-come,

die wertin die krône
they defended the crown

deme rîchen ervelôsan man,
to-the rich heirless man,

unze Wolfrât daz swert genam
until Wolfrat the sword took

an ênim schônim ringe,
in a fair ring,

der was van Tengelinge,
he was of Tengelingen,

des koningis Amelgêres sune:
the king Amelger's son:

iz nequam van eineme [sînin] kunne
there came-not from one [his] kin

alsô manich tûre wîgant.
so many precious fighters.

beide liude unde lant
both people and land

die beherte der tûre man,
them maintained the precious man,

biz Rôther wider quam.
until Rother back came.

In strîde lâgen die lant.
In strife lay the lands.

Rôther der wîgant
Rother the fighter

liez die wechmûdin
let the sorrowful-ones

luzzil gerûwen;
little rest;

hê môste durch gerichte varen.
he must for judgment fare.

hê heiz die vrouwen bewaren
he bade the lady guard

Lûppolden den getrûwen man.
Lupold the faithful man.

die andre rîtâre lossam
the other knights lovely

zô den rossin wâren sie gerech.
to the horses were they ready.

dô reit dâr manich gôt knech
then rode there many-a good knight

bit Rôthere ingegin Berne
with Rother toward Verona

unde strichen durch die berge.
and swept through the mountains.

die riesen hetten grôzen nôt,
the giants had great distress,

sie liefen alle gewâfenôt.
they ran all armed.

der reise Wolfrât enerwant,
the journey Wolfrat desisted-not,

dô wîster over lant
then guided-he over land

eine vil breide menie
a very broad host

Rôthere zô gegine.
to-Rother to toward.

her infienc in mit êren
he received him with honors

alsô van rechte ein man sînen hêrren.
as by right a man his lord.

Sich hôf der lût over den dôz.
Itself raised the sound over the din.

dâr wart der scal harde grôz,
there was the clamor very great,

dâr der hêre Constantîn
where the lord Constantine

reit ûf den hof sîn
rode upon the court his

zô Constantînopole in der stât.
at Constantinople in the city.

der kŏninc hastelîche sprach,
the king hastily spoke,

wâ sîn tochter wêre,
where his daughter were,

daz hê sie nicht insêge.
that he her not should-see.

des antwarde die kuningîn:
of-that answered the queen:

„gehalt dich wale, Constantîn.
„hold thee well, Constantine.

geinir rîtâr êrlîch,
yonder knight honorable,

der sich dâ nante Dietherîch,
who himself there named Dietrich,

daz was der koninc Rôther
that was the king Rother

unde hât gevôrt over mere
and has led over sea

mîne tochter unde dîn.
my daughter and thine.

wie mochte sie baz bestadet sîn?
how might she better bestowed be?

si wil der listige man
her will the cunning man

zô eineme wette hân,
for a pledge have,

biz ime wirt gelônit
until to-him is rewarded

des hê der hât gedienit.
what he to-thee has served.

her hât uns rechte getân.
he has to-us rightly done.

wir hetten wonderlîchen wân;
we had wondrous belief;

wat recken mochte dâr sô rîche sîn?
what warriors might there so rich be?

ir sît gewarnet, Constantîn:
you are warned, Constantine:

kome û imermêr gein vertriven man,
(if)-comes to-you evermore any banished man,

dâ solit ir ûch baz vor warnan“.
there shall you you better before guard“.

Constantînis gemôde
Constantine's spirit

sich verwandelôde,
itself changed,

her begunde sêre weinin
he began sorely to-weep

inde quelite sich von leide.
and tormented himself for sorrow.

hê sprach: „owî, vrou koningîn,
he spoke: „alas, lady queen,

nû rouwet mich die tochter mîn,
now grieves me the daughter mine,

die der kuninc Rôther
whom the king Rother

hat gevôrt over mere.
has led over sea.

nu ist iz mich dûre bestân,
now is it me dearly cost,

waz sô her gaf gehênin man“.
what so he gave to-any man“.

her viel van leide in unmacht.
he fell from sorrow into swoon.

dô zouch der burgêre kraf
then drew of-the burghers multitude

ûz der stat mêre.
out-of the city famous.

ire rôfin was mêregrôz.
their crying was very-great.

wê wal des Ymelôt genôz!
how well of-that Ymelot profited!

der sîn solde plegin,
who of-him should take-care,

der zouch dur wunder after wege
he drew for wonder after way

unde wolde gerne hân gesien,
and would gladly have seen,

waz dâ wêre gescien.
what there were happened.

Ymelôt mit listin
Ymelot with cunning

begunde den lîf vristin:
began the life to-save:

dô Constantîn dâr nider lach,
when Constantine there down lay,

Ymelôt hûf sich ûze der stat,
Ymelot raised himself out-of the city,

in eime sciffe hê intran
into a ship he escaped

unde vôr bit koufmannin dan
and fared with merchants away

zô der wôsten Babilônie,
to the desert Babylon,

danne sîch manigen koninge
whence himself to-many kings

von ime begeginde grôz herzeleit:
from him met great heart-sorrow:

des gewonnin ouch die reckin michel arbeit.
of-that won also the warriors great hardship.

Alse Constantîn zô ime selven bequam,
As Constantine to him self came,

dô rief man wider man,
then called man to man,

dê aldin und die jungin:
the old and the young:

„Ymelôt ist intronnin".
„Ymelot is escaped".

„jâriâ" sprach Constantîn,
„alas" spoke Constantine,

nû nemit scaz, vrouwe koningîn,
now take treasure, lady queen,

unde gevit den wîgandin
and give to-the fighters

unde vromit si heim zô lande,
and send them home to land,

of hê mich hie nâ bestê,
if he me here after should-attack,

daz mir des volkis ich zegê".
that to-me of-the folk not fail".

si was des goldis milde,
she was of-the gold generous,

si legedit ûf die scilde;
she laid-it upon the shields;

vorsten den rîchen
to-princes the rich

gaf si rîclîchen
gave she richly

unde lônede den gôdin knechtin,
and rewarded the good knights,

alse man noch van rechtin
as one yet by right

plegit grôzer êren.
practices of-great honors.

zô lande riden die hêrren.
to land ride the lords.

Dô die grôze menie
When the great host

gerûmde deme koninge,
cleared-off from-the king,

dô sprac ein spileman:
then spoke a minstrel:

„hêrre, dû salt dich wol gehân!
„lord, thou shalt thee well bear!

lônis dû mir, Constantîn,
(if)-rewardest thou me, Constantine,

ich brenge dir die tochter dîn.
I bring to-thee the daughter thine.

wir môzin aver einin kiel havin,
we must however a keel have,

die maniger hande wondir trage,
which many-a kind-of wonder should-carry,

golt unde steine,
gold and gems,

wazzerperlîn kleine,
water-pearls small,

scarlachin unde pellen.
scarlet and brocades.

swer dâ koufen wolle,
whoever there buy would,

daz wir des gôde stade hân.
that we of-it good occasion have.

seszich rîtâre lossam
sixty knights lovely

die solin derinne verholne sîn.
they shall therein hidden be.

die juncvrouwe, Constantîn,
the young-lady, Constantine,

bedrûgit die seltsêne wât,
deceives the strange garment,

dat sie lîchte in den kiel gât
that she lightly into the keel goes

unde schouwet mîn krâmgewant,
and looks-at my wares,

sô vôre wir si in daz dîn lant.
so lead we her into the thy land.

nû sprich waz dû mir biedis;
now say what thou to-me offerest;

unde behaget mir die mêde,
and (if)-pleases me the reward,

ich sezze in urteil den lîf,
I set in judgment the life,

ich nebrenge der Rôtheres wîf“.
I unless-bring to-thee Rother's woman“.

„Genâdhe, hêre“ sprach Constantîn,
„Thanks, lord“ spoke Constantine,

„ich wîse dich ûf den scaz mîn.
„I direct thee to the treasure mine.

des nim dir, trûtgeselle,
of-it take for-thee, dear-comrade,

swê vile dû willis.
however much thou wilt.

mir ist zô der verde lief,
to-me is to the journey dear,

ich neversûme dich mînis dankis nich“.
I neglect thee by-my will not“.

der sigel zô deme kêlə
the sail to the keel

wart gereit schîre,
was readied quickly,

dar în trouch man golt rôt,
there into carried one gold red,

alse der koninc gebôt,
as the king commanded,

nuschen unde bôge unde hârbant,
brooches and bracelets and hairbands,

seltsêne krâmgewant,
strange wares,

daz sante Constantîn
that sent Constantine

mit râde nâ der tochter sîn.
with counsel after the daughter his.

daz gôt begunde man zô tragin:
the goods began one to carry:

scîre wart der kiel geladhin.
quickly was the keel laden.

veren unde spileman
ferrymen and minstrels

hûven sich alle dar an,
raised themselves all there on,

ingigin Bâre sciften over mere.
toward Bari shipped over sea.

dô was der kuninc Rôthere
then was the king Rother

hine zô Rîflande
away to Ripuaria

mit sînin vîanden.
with his enemies.

dâr richte der gôde keiser
there judged the good emperor

widewin unde weisin.
widows and orphans.

Dô die leide Kriechin
When the hateful Greeks

ze Bâre zô stiezin,
at Bari to-shore pushed,

ûz gienc der spileman
out went the minstrel

unde trûch der kiselinge an
and carried of-the pebbles on

vêre, die her anme stade vant.
four, which he on-the shore found.

listich was der vâlant.
cunning was the devil.

nû siet war zô hê sê wolde
now see what for he them would

oder wê si koufen solde!
or how she buy should!

Des morgins alsiz dagede,
In-the morning as-it dawned,

der spileman havede
the minstrel had

behangen sîne krâme
hung his booth

mit gewête seltsêne.
with garments strange.

dô giengin die burgêre
then went the burghers

ûz der stat ze Bâre.
out-of the city at Bari.

sie veilsceden golt unde pellin:
they priced gold and brocades:

„wie biedet ir dat, geselle?“
„how offer you that, comrade?“

dane was nechein sô tûre dinc,
there was no so precious thing,

her negêvit umbe einin penninc.
he unless-gave-it for a penny.

dô dûchte die burgâre,
then seemed to-the burghers,

daz hê ein tôre wâre.
that he a fool were.

si kouften sîn gewête,
they bought his garments,

swat hê gôtes hette.
whatever he of-goods had.

einer die kiselinge gesach,
one the pebbles saw,

her sprach: „geselle, war zô wollit ir daz?“
he spoke: „comrade, what for will you that?“

dô bôit hê einin an der stunt
then offered he one at the hour

nit wan umbe dûsint punt
not except for thousand pounds

des allir bestin goldis,
of-the of-all best gold,

des die vrouwen tragen woldin.
which the ladies wear would.

dô sprach der burgâre,
then spoke the burgher,

dat iz sîn spot wêre:
that it his mockery were:

„ir lieget deme dûvele an daz bein,
„you lie to-the devil on the leg,

diz dunkit mich ein bôse veltstein".
this seems to-me a wretched field-stone".

„Entrouwen", sprach die spileman,
„In-truth", spoke the minstrel,

„ir havent ime unrechte getân,
„you have to-it wrongly done,

ir velschedin âne nôt;
you disparage without need;

hê ist ze manigin dingin guot.
it is for many things good.

nême in ein koningîn an die hant,
should-take it a queen in the hand,

her lûchte ovir al diz lant.
it would-shine over all this land.

nêman ersturve:
anyone should-die:

ê hê begraven wurde,
before he buried should-be,

man solden dar mide bestrîchin,
one should-him there with stroke,

sô leveder sicherlîche;
so would-live-he surely;

nieman inis halz noch krump,
no-one is lame nor crooked,

hê newurde sciere gesunt,
he unless-became quickly sound,

gerôrde in die koningîn
should-touch him the queen

mit deme gôden steine mîn;
with the good stone mine;

si soldiz aver in disme sciffe dôn,
she should-it however in this ship do,

over it nis chein vrome dar zô.
otherwise it is no profit there to.

hette wir einin krumbin man,
had we a crooked man,

inde wolde die koningîn dar în gân,
and would the queen there into go,

[in] nesî it dan nûwit wâr,
[it] (if)-be it then not-at-all true,

dat ich û gesagit hân,
what I to-you told have,

sô heizit mich vân
so bid me capture

unde up ein boum hân“.
and upon a tree have“.

A knight of Bari begs the queen to touch his two crippled children with the stone aboard the ship. With Lupold away, she steps aboard, and the Greeks carry her off to Constantinople, where her father welcomes her. Bari fears Rother's wrath, but Lupold calms the burghers. When Rother returns, Lupold offers his life for his failure; Rother forgives him, and Berchter urges a new war.

Dô sprach ein rîtâre,
Then spoke a knight,

dê geweldich was ze Bâre:
who mighty was at Bari:

„ich hân zwei wênige kindelîn,
„I have two wretched little-children,

die ein jâr gelegin sîn,
who a year lain are,

die wir ie môstin tragin:
whom we ever must carry:

ich willit mînir vrouwen sagin.
I will-it to-my lady tell.

wat of si durch ire gôde
what if she for her goodness

gebôzet der selver nôde?
amends of-the same distress?

gehilfet in der dîn stein,
(if)-helps them the thy stone,

daz sie geint wider heim,
that they go back home,

ich geve der gôtes suliche kraft,
I give to-thee of-goods such abundance,

swaz dû is gevôren macht".
whatever thou of-it carry mayst".

„liegich", sprach der spileman,
„(if)-lie-I", spoke the minstrel,

„heizit mir mîn hôvet ave sclân.
„bid me my head off strike.

mir ist der lîf sô lief,
to-me is the life so dear,

ich negeven dir sô niet“.
I give-it to-thee so not“.

sîne vronde hê dô nam,
his friends he then took,

seszên koufman,
sixteen merchants,

unde gienc vor die vrouwen stân.
and went before the lady stand.

do infienc in die rîche
then received him the rich-one

harde gunstelîche
very graciously

in allen den gebêre
in all the bearing

alser ein hêrre wêre.
as-if-he a lord were.

Dô bat her die kuninginne
Then begged he the queen

durch sancte Pêtres willen,
for saint Peter's sake,

dat sie ûf hulfe zwên haften
that she up should-help two captives

von grôzen unkreften.
from great weaknesses.

„daz sîn, vrouwe, mîne kint,
„they are, lady, my children,

die lange krump gelegin sint.
who long crooked lain are.

hie steit ein kiel bî deme stade,
here stands a keel by the shore,

dar sal ich si up heizin tragin.
there shall I them up bid carry.

dâr liget gesteine dat ist gôt
there lies jewels that is good

unde bôzit manigen sîner nôt.
and amends many-a-one of-his distress.

nemet ir einin, vrouwe, an die hant,
(if)-take you one, lady, in the hand,

hê lûchtet over alle die lant,
it shines over all the lands,

swilich man erstervit,
whichever man dies,

ê hê begravin werde,
before he buried should-be,

woldet ir in dar mide bestrîchin,
would you him there with stroke,

hê levede sân vrôlîchen.
he would-live at-once joyfully.

nêman nis halz noch krump,
no-one is lame nor crooked,

hê newerde zô hant gesunt,
he unless-became at once sound,

alse uns gener geseget hât,
as us yonder-one told has,

dê si hât here brâch.
who them has hither brought.

her sprichit, insî iz niuwit wâr,
he says, (if)-be it not-at-all true,

daz ich û gesagit hân,
what I to-you told have,

daz ic in hêze vân
that I him should-bid capture

unde ûf einin boum hân.
and upon a tree have.

versôchtez, vrouwe, durch got!
try-it, lady, for God!

is wirt û wol gelônôt,
it is to-you well rewarded,

unde trôstet mîne arme kint,
and comfort my poor children,

die nû lange gelegin sint,
who now long lain are,

wand ich weinger man
for I wretched man

sîn dâ michel leit hân".
of-them there great sorrow have".

„Nû dû mich", sprach die koningîn,
„Now thou me", spoke the queen,

„biddis durch unsin trechtîn,
„askest for our Lord,

ich newille dir nit versagen.
I will to-thee not refuse.

nû heiz die kint zô deme sciffe tragin".
now bid the children to the ship carry".

Lûppolt was ûz gegân;
Lupold was out gone;

zwênzich rîtâr lossam
twenty knights lovely

volgeden der vrouwen zô deme kiele.
followed the lady to the keel.

dar quâmen die siechen scîre,
there came the sick-ones quickly,

den sû dâr gôt solde sîn.
to-whom she there good should be.

in den kiel trat die koningîn.
into the keel stepped the queen.

„wol ûf" sprach der spileman,
„well up" spoke the minstrel,

„zô den Kriechen wille wir varen.
„to the Greeks will we fare.

siet wâr daz wîf stât,
see where the woman stands,

die uns here gemout hât“.
who us hither troubled has“.

dô sprungin vil scîre
then sprang very quickly

die Kriechen zô deme kiele,
the Greeks to the keel,

die krumben wurchen sie an daz stat,
the crooked-ones worked they to the shore,

gêneme wart der hantslach.
pleasing was the handclasp.

die der vrouwen soldin plegen,
who the lady should take-care-of,

die vôrden die Kriechen after wege.
them led the Greeks along way.

nû siet zô deme vâlandas man,
now look at the devilish man,

wê hê dat wîf gewan!
how he the woman won!

Die Kriechen hûven sich dan.
The Greeks raised themselves thence.

die vrouwe vrâgede den spileman,
the lady asked the minstrel,

wie in dare sante
who him thither sent

zô deme selvin lande.
to the same land.

„daz dede mîn hêrre Constantîn,
„that did my lord Constantine,

der lieve vater dîn
the dear father thine

sante uns over mere“.
sent us over sea“.

„owî koninc Rôthere“
„alas king Rother“

sprach daz wênige wîf,
spoke the wretched woman,

„wie dû nû dînen lîf
„how thou now thy life

beginnis quelin umbe mich,
beginnest to-torment for me,

sô duon ich mînin umbe dich“.
so do I mine for thee“.

Die vrouwen gehâtin sich ovele.
The ladies bore themselves ill.

zô Constantînopile
to Constantinople

vôrde sie die spileman.
led them the minstrel.

wie scîre nûmêre quam,
how quickly tidings came,

den vorsten wêre gelungin!
to-the princes were succeeded!

aldin unde jungin
old and young

heizin sie willekomin sîn.
bade them welcome be.

in den kiel trat Constantîn
into the keel stepped Constantine

unde nam die tochter bî der hant
and took the daughter by the hand

unde vôrde sie ûf daz lant.
and led her up-to the land.

hê halste sie unde kuste;
he embraced her and kissed;

wie wol in des geluste!
how well him of-that pleased!

die môder weinende gênc,
the mother weeping went,

ir tochter sie ungerne infienc.
her daughter she unwillingly received.

swaz die môder redde,
whatever the mother said,

die tochter iz alliz dolete.
the daughter it all endured.

Constantîne was vil lief,
to-Constantine was very dear,

her inachte ûf ire sprechin nit,
he heeded upon her speaking not,

hê liez si swîgin unde dagin,
he let her keep-silent and be-quiet,

biz si is gnôch mochte havin.
until she of-it enough might have.

Do erscal daz nûmâre
Then resounded the tidings

ovir al die stat zô Bâre,
over all the city at Bari,

daz die vrouwe was verloren.
that the lady was lost.

si vorten Rôtheres zorn:
they feared Rother's anger:

beide wîf unde man,
both woman and man,

sie woldin alle in wech gân.
they would all on way go.

dô quam der helit Lûppolt
then came the hero Lupold

unde trôste daz trôrige volc,
and comforted the sorrowful folk,

hê bat sie dâr belîven:
he bade them there remain:

des inwêre negein zwîvel,
of-that were no doubt,

hê negewonne die hulde,
he unless-should-win the favor,

daz Rôther die sculde
that Rother the guilt

an ir negeime rêche
on of-them none should-avenge

oder icht[es] leides sprêche.
or anything of-sorrow should-speak.

dô vielen al gelîche
then fell all alike

die burgêre alsô rîche
the burghers so rich

zô den vôzen Lûppolde.
to the feet of-Lupold.

sie sprâchen, swaz hê wolde,
they spoke, whatever he would,

des volgeden sie ûf sînen trôst.
that followed they upon his comfort.

ir sorgen wâren vile grôz.
their cares were very great.

dô sprach der hêrre vile gôt:
then spoke the lord very good:

„got helfe uns ûzer nôt!
„God help us out-of distress!

mînes hêrren trûwe is sô vile,
my lord's faith is so much,

wir genesen wol, of iz got wil".
we survive well, if it God wills".

Von dem tage over siven nacht
From the day over seven nights

dô quam mit grôzer heres kraft
then came with great host's strength

Rôther der hêrre
Rother the lord

unde vant leide mêre.
and found sorrowful tidings.

Lûppolt der getrûwe man,
Lupold the faithful man,

der gienc vor die hêrren alle stân
he went before the lords all stand

unde sprach zô deme koninge hêrlîch:
and spoke to the king lordly:

„ich hân mich, hêrre, wider dich
„I have myself, lord, toward thee

ovele behalden, Rôthere.
ill held, Rother.

dîn wîf ist wider over mere.
thy woman is back over sea.

daz havet Constantînis man
that has Constantine's man

mit grôzen listen getân.
with great cunning done.

nû vortich, hêrre, dînen zorn,
now fear-I, lord, thy anger,

daz mer der lîf sî verlorn.
that to-me the life be lost.

hie steit mîn brôder Erwîn.
here stands my brother Erwin.

hê lach durch den willin dîn
he lay for the sake thine

zô Kriechen vil manigen tach,
in Greece very many-a day,

daz hê die sunne nie gesach.
that he the sun never saw.

mochte wir sîn geniezen,
might we of-him enjoy,

daz ir genesen liezin
that you survive should-let

eine vil unsculdige diet:
a very guiltless folk:

die nehât dir getân nich.
it has to-thee done nothing.

ich nam die burgâre,
I took the burghers,

die woldin ûzer Bâre
who would out-of Bari

alle iren wech gân;
all their way go;

ûf mînin trôst sîn sie hie bestân.
upon my comfort are they here stayed.

ich bin eine sculdich wider dich,
I am alone guilty toward thee,

dû solt richtin over mich.
thou shalt judge over me.

daz ist billîch unde recht.
that is fitting and right.

waz bedorfte ein gôt knecht
what needed a good knight

rîchetûmes mêre,
of-riches more,

behêlde hê trûwe unde êre?
should-keep he faith and honor?

nû ich des nîne hân getân,
now I that not-at-all have done,

nû lâz iz mir an den lîf gân“.
now let it to-me at the life go“.

Nû vernemet wie Rôther sprach,
Now hear how Rother spoke,

deme daz herzeleit gescach.
to-whom the heart-sorrow happened.

vor den hêrren allin samt
before the lords all together

nam hê Lûppolde mit der hant
took he Lupold with the hand

unde kuste en vor den munt sîn:
and kissed him on the mouth his:

„gehave dich wole, neve mîn,
„bear thee well, nephew mine,

war umbe quelis dû den lîf?
what for tormentest thou the life?

iz levet sô manich schône wîf.
there lives so many-a fair woman.

is uns aver sichein guot
(if)-is us however any good

von der vrouwen geordinôt,
from the lady ordained,

daz mach ze jungest wal irgân.
that may at last well come-about.

swîch, dugenhafter man.
be-silent, virtuous man.

vorchtes dû mînen zorn,
should-fear thou my anger,

sô wêre dîn dienest ovele verlorn,
so were thy service ill lost,

daz dû mir dicke hâst getân.
which thou to-me often hast done.

jâ lêge dû, helt lossam,
yea layest thou, hero lovely,

zô Kriechen dritehalf jâr
in Greece two-and-a-half years

dînes lîves harte ungewar,
of-thy life very heedless,

unde manich rîtâr êrlîch.
and many-a knight honorable.

gezornitich immir widir dich,
should-rage-I ever against thee,

sô dâdich alse Jûdâs,
so would-do-I like Judas,

der sich selvin virlôis.
who himself self destroyed.

dû salt den burgêren sagin,
thou shalt to-the burghers say,

daz sie sich alle wal gehaven".
that they themselves all well bear".

Dâr hôrde manich gôt knecht
There heard many-a good knight

Rôtheres lantrech
Rother's land-law

unde wie sîn zorn was getân.
and how his anger was made.

der herzoge von Merân
the duke of Meran

gienc gezogenlîche
went courteously

vor den koninc rîche
before the king rich

unde lachede vor lieve:
and laughed for joy:

„nû lâze dich got verdienen,
„now let thee God repay,

daz dû Lûppolde hâst getân,
what thou to-Lupold hast done,

an mir armen man.
on me poor man.

hûde hât dîn trûwe
today has thy faith

die aldin zucht genûwet,
the old breeding renewed,

der dîn vatir plegete
which thy father practiced

die wîle daz hê levete.
the while that he lived.

unde wâre mîn lîf zwâre
and were my life truly

alse vor vonfzich jâren,
as before fifty years,

so verdiendich dise êre
so would-earn-I this honor

unde edlîche mêre.
and some more.

nune mach des leider niwet sîn.
now may of-that alas not-at-all be.

nû hât der kuninc Constantîn
now has the king Constantine

etelîcheme gemachet mo̊ —
to-some-one made trouble—

dar gedenket, jungelinge, zô! —
there think, youths, to!—

die hie intgegenwart stân.
who here present stand.

daz ist des vâlandes man.
that is the devil's man.

ich gemezze, Rôther,
I pledge, Rother,

wir solin mit kreften over mere.
we shall with strength over sea.

mir nist der bart nie sô grâ,
to-me is the beard never so gray,

daz ich hie heime bestâ".
that I here at-home should-stay".

XVII · THE MUSTER AT BARI

Asprian calls on Rother's men; Widolt pledges his help, Wolfrat twelve thousand, Lupold twenty thousand from Milan, and Berchter twenty thousand, for a muster at Bari twelve weeks hence. Berchter rides in first in shining armor, then Lupold's host and Wolfrat's Bavarians. Rother sends most of them home with gold and sails with thirty thousand, landing in a wood near Constantinople. He means to go in as a pilgrim; Wolfrat bids him take Berchter and Lupold and gives him a horn to sound if he is in danger.

„Wâr sint nû", sprach Aspriân,
„Where are now", spoke Asprian,

mînis hêrren Rôtheres man, 3380
my lord Rother's men,

den hê ie sîn gôt gaf
to-whom he ever his goods gave

unde den kreftigen scaz?
and the mighty treasure?

nu bedarf her er an der nôde".
now needs he them in the distress".

dô drungin helede gôte
then pressed heroes good

vaste zô deme ringe
firmly to the ring

* * *
(lacuna)

unde erven manich lantrecht.
and inherit many-a land-right.

dâr lovete manich gôt knecht
there vowed many-a good knight

Rôthere deme rîchen
to-Rother the rich

harde vromelîche,
very valiantly,

quêmez ime an die nôt,
should-come-it to-him in the distress,

sie rieden mit ime an den dôt.
they would-ride with him into the death.

lûde rief Widolt:
loud called Widolt:

„hie ist ein hêrlîcher volc,
„here is a lordly folk,

lant unde mâge
land and kinsmen

sezzent sie an die wâge
set they on the balance

durch dînen willin, Rôthere.
for thy sake, Rother.

wir solin dir helpin ovir mere.
we shall to-thee help over sea.

swer dir icht dienet,
whoever to-thee anything serves,

deme wirt wal gelônet.
to-him is well rewarded.

uns havint Constantînis man
to-us have Constantine's men

ein grôz herzeleit getân.
a great heart-sorrow done.

genuzzen si des, daz wêre mer zorn,
should-enjoy they of-it, that were to-me anger,

sô hettich och einin michelen louf verlorn".
so had-I also a great run lost".

Dô sprach der helit Wolfrât:
Then spoke the hero Wolfrat:

„nû iz Widolt gelovet hât,
„now it Widolt vowed has,

daz wir deme koninge Rôthere
that we to-the king Rother

solin helfen over mere,
shall help over sea,

ich vôre ûzer mînen lande
I lead out-of my land

der tûren wîgande
of-the precious fighters

eine michele scare,
a great troop,

zwelif dûsent rîtâre wale gare.
twelve thousand knights well ready.

Lûppolde zwâren
to-Lupold truly

wil ich sîn êre waren.
will I his honor guard.

der hêre ist mîn konlinc.
the lord is my kinsman.

iz ist ein cristenlîch dinc,
it is a Christian thing,

daz beide brôdere unde neven
that both brothers and nephews

bit ein ander rechte levin.
with one another rightly live.

swer den vront durch sîn eines rât
whoever the friend for his own counsel

verlâzet, so iz ime an die nôt gât,
abandons, when it to-him at the distress goes,

geswiche her deme lantman,
should-betray he the countryman,

her hette michel baz getân.
he had much better done.

Berker der rîche
Berchter the rich

der tede vromelîche:
he did valiantly:

dô mîn vatir was virtriven,
when my father was banished,

hê gewan ime sîn lant wider,
he won to-him his land back,

hê erslûch Elvewîne,
he slew Elvewin,

einen herzogen van Rîne,
a duke of Rhine,

der was ein vreisclîcher man,
he was a terrible man,

her hâte uns michil leith getân.
he had to-us great sorrow done.

von den sculdin sîn,
from the causes his,

Lûppolt, trût neve mîn,
Lupold, dear nephew mine,

sô wil ich imer dir bî stân
so will I ever thee by stand

die wîle ich daz levin hân“.
the while I the life have“.

sus vermaz sich in deme ringe
thus pledged himself in the ring

der hêre von Tengelinge.
the lord of Tengelingen.

„Wâr sîn mîne mâge unde man?
„Where are my kinsmen and men?

wir sulin sicherlîche varen
we shall surely fare

in daz Constantînis lant“
into the Constantine's land“

sprach Lûppolt, der helet balt.
spoke Lupold, the hero bold.

„nû mîn neve Wolfrât,
„now my nephew Wolfrat,

alser gelovet hât,
as-he vowed has,

rîdet heim ze lande
rides home to land

nâ den wîgande,
after the fighters,

sô vôrich helede junge
so lead-I heroes young

zô der samenunge
to the gathering

ûz der stat zô Meylân,
out-of the city at Milan,

die ich von Rôthere hân,
which I from Rother have,

zwênzich dûsint manne
twenty thousand men

mit snêwîzen bronien.
with snow-white byrnies.

des sî ein tach gesprochin
of-that be a day spoken

van hûte ober zwelf wochin
from today over twelve weeks

her zô Bâre ûf den sant".
hither to Bari upon the sand".

daz gelovete manich wîgant
that vowed many-a fighter

vor Rôthere deme rîchen
before Rother the rich

harde vromelîche.
very valiantly.

dô sprach der herzoge von Merân:
then spoke the duke of Meran:

„zwênzich dûsint lussam,
„twenty thousand lovely,

der salt dû wartin, Rôthere,
of-them shalt thou await, Rother,

von mir ze volleist over mere.
from me for aid over sea.

ich gelove dir an die trûwe mîn,
I vow to-thee on the faith mine,

widervert mir Constantîn,
(if)-encounters me Constantine,

deme wert lîchte ein swerdis slach,
to-him becomes easily a sword's blow,

daz hê gedenken nîne mach,
that he think not-at-all may,

of ime dî tochter ie wurde lief —
whether to-him the daughter ever became dear—

stervich ê [dan], des inmach ich dan nicht—: 3465
(if)-die-I before [then], that may I then not—:

daz inwîze mir negein man,
that blame me no man,

wande hê hât mir michel leit getân.
for he has to-me great sorrow done.

mich dwingit noch die alde nôt,
me presses still the old distress,

daz hê Lûppolde sô hât gemarterôt".
that he Lupold so has tortured".

Die hêrren lâgen over nacht 3470
The lords lay over night

ze Bâre in der stat.
at Bari in the city.

des morgenis rûmpten si den sant.
in-the morning cleared they the sand.

dô strichen vorsten over lant,
then swept princes over land,

Lûppolt gegen Meylân,
Lupold toward Milan,

Berker ze Merân. 3475
Berchter to Meran.

dô reit ein helit junge
then rode a hero young

gegen Tenge[n]lingen,
toward Tengelingen,

daz was der helit Wolfrât,
that was the hero Wolfrat,

als uns daz bûch gezalt hât,
as to-us the book told has,

mit wie getânen êrin
with what-manner-of made honors

sie Rôthere deme hêrrin
they for-Rother the lord

gewunnin die vil gôten
won the very good

Pipinchis mûder,
Pippin's mother,

van deme uns Karlus sît bequam
from whom to-us Charles afterward came

unde eine magit lossam,
and a maid lovely,

die gôde sancte Gêrdrût.
the good saint Gertrude.

dâr zô Nivelle hât sie hûs
there at Nivelles has she house

unde hilfet den ellenden
and helps the exiles

gerne ûze den sunden.
gladly out-of the sins.

von dû nis daz liet
from that is the song

von lugenen gedichtet niet.
from lies composed not.

Der zît it nâhen began.
Of-the time it to-near began.

sich vazzede manich man
himself equipped many-a man

in die grôzen herevart,
into the great war-journey,

die Rôther gelovet hât.
which Rother vowed has.

dô streich ein alder wîgant
then swept an old fighter

wol gevazzit over lant
well equipped over land

in die stat ze Bâre
into the city at Bari

unde sagete lieve mêre,
and told dear tidings,

daz quême manich hereman.
that should-come many-a warrior.

hê reit ein ros lovesam
he rode a horse praiseworthy

unde vôrde in deme scilde sîn
and bore in the shield his

eine bukelen guldîn.
a boss golden.

der scilt was alsô getân,
the shield was so made,

daz hê alse ein vûr bran
that it like a fire burned

von deme overglaste.
from the over-gleam.

hê trôch eine brunien vaste,
he wore a byrnie firm,

ûf den gurtel gînc ime der bart.
upon the girdle went to-him the beard.

nechein hêre newart
no lord was

bî den zîden alsô lofsam
by the times so praiseworthy

alse der hêrre von Merân.
as the lord of Meran.

Rôther der rîche
Rother the rich

entfienc in vromelîche,
received him splendidly,

alsô tede Aspriân
so did Asprian

unde Widolt der kône man.
and Widolt the bold man.

hê sprach: „eiâ koninc edele,
he spoke: „eia king noble,

nune halt dich nicht ovele
now hold thee not ill

unde gif mir daz boden brôt.
and give to-me the messenger's bread.

dir komet manich helet gôt.
to-thee comes many-a hero good.

nim die burgâre
take the burghers

inde rît ûz ze Bâre
and ride out at Bari

ûf den sant lofsam.
upon the sand praiseworthy.

du gesîst edelîchen man,
thou seest noble men,

ê dise dach ende.
before this day end.

ich bin vore gesendit,
I am ahead sent,

daz ich der, hêrre, sal sagin
that I to-thee, lord, shall say

wie grôze mânkraft si haven".
how great multitude they have".

Rôther unde Aspriân
Rother and Asprian

unde Widolt der kône man,
and Widolt the bold man,

die nâmen die burgâre
they took the burghers

unde rieden ûz ze Bâre
and rode out at Bari

ûf einin sant lofsam
upon a sand praiseworthy

unde wartin allinthalvin dan.
and watched on-all-sides thence.

dô sâgen si under luften
then saw they under airs

volc bit grôzer krefte[n]
folk with great strength

rîden wol gewafenôt.
ride well armed.

dar brâchte manigen helet guot
there brought many-a hero good

Lûppolt, der getrûe man
Lupold, the faithful man

unde vôrde einin hêrlîchen vanen.
and bore a lordly banner.

alsin der wint hette verwandelôt,
when-it the wind had turned,

sô lûchte dar ane daz golt rôt
so shone there on the gold red

in allin den gebêrin,
in all the bearing,

alsiz himelbliche wêrin.
as-if-it heaven-lightning were.

dô sprâchen die burgâre
then spoke the burghers

ûzer der stat ze Bâre:
out-of the city at Bari:

„genêdeclîcher trechtîn,
„gracious Lord,

wer mac geniz volc sîn
who may yonder folk be

bî deme vanen wol getân?“
by the banner well made?“

dô sprach der herzoge von Merân:
then spoke the duke of Meran:

„Rôther, lieve hêrre mîn,
„Rother, dear lord mine,

dat sîn die nôtstadele dîn.
that are the stalwarts thine.

jeniz zeichen lossam
yonder sign lovely

vôrit Lûppolt, der getrûe man;
bears Lupold, the faithful man;

der verdienet hûde sîne grâfscaft,
he earns today his county,

daz dû ir ime wole gunnen macht.
that thou it to-him well grant mayst.

iz ist harde wê undersniden,
it is very splendidly parti-colored,

dâr rîdent zwênzich dûsint mide
there ride twenty thousand with

alsô getâner hereman,
so made warriors,

daz dâr nûwet mach vore bestânt.
that there nothing may before stand.

die vôrich unde mîne kint
them lead-I and my children

durch dînen willin in den sint“.
for thy sake onto the way“.

Dô lûften in strîte over lant
Then gleamed in strife over land

smaracten unde jâchant
emeralds and jacinths

neven der Lûppoldis scare.
beside the Lupold's troop.

deme einin vanen snêvare
to-the one banner snow-colored

deme volgedin jungelinge,
it followed youths,

die vôrde van Tenge[n]linge
whom led from Tengelingen

Wolfrât der junge man.
Wolfrat the young man.

dâr rieden vonzich dûsint an
there rode fifty thousand on

der ûz genomenen diete,
of-the out taken folk,

in allin êren stâte.
in all honors steadfast.

pellin unde kleine gewîre,
brocades and fine wire-work,

die scônen gezîre,
the fair ornaments,

die dâr ie dechein man
which there ever any man

ze herverte gewan,
to war-journey won,

die vôrtin si an den rossen.
them bore they on the horses.

in pellînen rockin
in brocade coats

quam die bêrische diet.
came the Bavarian folk.

iz nebelûchte niechein lîcht
there shone no light

alsô manigen helm gût
so many-a helm good

mit golde wol gezierôt,
with gold well adorned,

dan der helet Wolfrât
than the hero Wolfrat

sîme neven hette brâcht.
to-his nephew had brought.

iz scînet den Beieren imer mêr an:
it shows on-the Bavarians ever more on:

da ist noch manich wâtziere man.
there is yet many-a garment-proud man.

Alse die helede guote
As the heroes good

geherbegeten
lodged

ûffe den sant bî dem mere,
upon the sand by the sea,

dô gienc der koninc Rôthere
then went the king Rother

unde infienc mit grôzen êren
and received with great honors

Lûppolde den hêrren
Lupold the lord

unde Wolfrâtin
and Wolfrat

unde manigen helet gûten.
and many-a hero good.

die heiz hê willekomin sîn.
them bade he welcome be.

„owî. Rôther hêrre mîn“ 3595
„alas. Rother lord mine“

sprach der riese Aspriân,
spoke the giant Asprian,

„daz ich nicht samenunge nehân
„that I no gathering have

ûzer mîneme lande
out-of my land

der tûeren wîgande;
of-the precious fighters;

daz machet daz si verre sint. 3600
that makes that they far are.

nû môz ich leider eine sîn“.
now must I alas alone be“.

„swîgit, hêre Aspriân“,
„be-silent, lord Asprian“,

sprach Widolt der kône man,
spoke Widolt the bold man,

„dâr zô Constantinopole,
„there at Constantinople,

in der mêren burge, 3605
in the famous castle,

nist negeinis salis dure
is no hall's door

unde gestellit ir mich da vore,
and (if)-place you me there before,

ist dâr dan ieman inne,
is there then anyone in,

sich hevet ein unminne,
itself raises an un-love,

daz man si biz tôme[n]s tach
that one it until doom's day

bit necheinen êren verreden inmach“.
with no honors talk-away may“.

Die hêren wâren dâr over nacht
The lords were there over night

biz an den anderen tach.
until to the other day.

dô nam der hêre von Merân
then took the lord of Meran

Lûppolden den getrûwen man
Lupold the faithful man

unde Wolfrâten.
and Wolfrat.

sie giengen vil drâte,
they went very quickly,

die swert drûch Erwîn,
the swords carried Erwin,

daz gebôt ime der vader sîn.
that commanded him the father his.

dô rieden sie deme koninge,
then counseled they the king,

daz hê ûzer der menie
that he out-of the host

welide drîzich dûsint lossam
should-choose thirty thousand lovely

unde lieze die andre ze hûs varin
and should-let the others to house fare

inde gâfin bit golde,
and should-give with gold,

die daz nemen wolde.
whoever that take would.

alse dê rât was getân,
when the counsel was done,

dô gienc der riese Aspriân
then went the giant Asprian

unde nam des koninges golt rôt,
and took the king's gold red,

als ime Berker gebôt,
as him Berchter commanded,

inde gaf den wîganden;
and gave to-the fighters;

hê vromede sie heim ze lande.
he sent them home to land.

dô vôrte der koninc Rôthere
then led the king Rother

drîzic dûsint over mere,
thirty thousand over sea,

unde zwên unde zwênzich kiele
and two and twenty keels

wordin geladen scîre.
became laden quickly.

dâr vôr vil manich man,
there fared very many-a man,

des vader nie ze Bâre quam.
whose father never to Bari came.

Lûde duzzin die segele,
Loud roared the sails,

die kiele giengen evene
the keels went evenly

inde quâmen in ses wochen
and came in six weeks

over mere gevlozzen
over sea floated

hin ze Constantînopole,
thither to Constantinople,

der vil mêren burge.
the very famous castle.

eine mîle niderhalf der stat,
a mile below the city,

dâr holz unde geberge lach,
where wood and hills lay,

dâr zugen Rôtheres man
there drew Rother's men

under die boume lossam
under the trees lovely

die ros ûz den kielen,
the horses out-of the keels,

daz iz inwiste nieman
that it knew no-one

over al Kriechenlant,
over all Greek-land,

wie manich tûere wîgant
how many-a precious fighter

in den walt scône
into the forest fair

brâchte der koninc von Rôme.
brought the king of Rome.

an den lach die alde zucht
in them lay the old breeding

unde die wereltlîche vroucht,
and the worldly fear,

die solde ein iegelîch man
which should an each man

wider sînen hêrren hân,
toward his lord have,

sone worde die gruntveste
so became the foundations

nûwet der helle geste.
not-at-all of-the hell guests.

Alse die helede gûte
As the heroes good

die scif gerûmôten,
the ships cleared,

dô zugen die Rôtheres man
then drew the Rother's men

under die boume lossam.
under the trees lovely.

dô sprach der koninc rîche
then spoke the king rich

harde wîslîche:
very wisely:

„vrunt inde man,
„friends and men,

ich wille vor Constantîne gân,
I will before Constantine go,

in wallêres wîse
in pilgrim's manner

werven mîne spîse
seek my food

durch nûmâris willen".
for tidings' sake".

dô sprach von Tengelingen
then spoke of Tengelingen

Wolfrât der junge man:
Wolfrat the young man:

„dune salt nicht eine dare gân.
„thou shalt not alone thither go.

Berker ist ein wîs man
Berchter is a wise man

unde hât dir manigen rât getân;
and has to-thee many-a counsel done;

wilt dû, koninc hêre,
wilt thou, king noble,

behalden dîn êre,
keep thy honor,

dan bidde mit dir gân
then bid with thee go

Lûppolde den getrûwen man.
Lupold the faithful man.

nû nim daz guode horn mîn,
now take the good horn mine,

daz sal die bezêchenunge sîn.
that shall the signal be.

die Krîchen plegent sinne
the Greeks practice wits

unde wirt dîn ieman innen,
and (if)-becomes of-thee anyone aware,

dich vânt Constantînis man".
thee captures Constantine's man".

„introuwen" sprach Aspriân,
„in-truth" spoke Asprian,

„verneme wir dîn horn,
„(if)-hear we thy horn,

sô ist die veste verlorn,
so is the fortress lost,

die bruc nist nîrgen sô wît,
the bridge is nowhere so wide,

sô mir sêle unde lîf,
so-help me soul and life,

vor wilecher strâze ich bestân
before which street I stand

unde Widolt der kône man,
and Widolt the bold man,

dâr wir der engeste pfat,
there we the narrowest path,

den iechein man gesach".
that any man saw".

Rother goes toward the city as a pilgrim with Berchter and Lupold. A knight of Constantine's met by the forest praises the warrior who captured Ymelot, names him as Rother, and tells him that Constantine, captured and ransomed, has given the princess to Ymelot, whose son is to take her tonight. At the feast Rother hides under the table and passes her a ring with his name. She laughs, and Ymelot warns that spies are in the hall; his son Basilistium saw the ring, and Constantine sets twelve men at the door to find Rother.

Dô sluffen die helede guode
Then slipped the heroes good

in pilegrîmis gewête. 3695
into pilgrims' garments.

der herzoge von Merân
the duke of Meran

unde Lûppolt der getrûwe man,
and Lupold the faithful man,

die volgitin deme koninge,
they followed the king,

gânde von der menige.
going from the host.

Dô reit ein recke guote, 3700
Then rode a warrior good,

vor den walt her schouwete.
before the forest he looked.

Rôther der rîche
Rother the rich

grôztin gûtlîche
greeted-him kindly

unde vrâgete ∗∗∗
and asked (lacuna)

waz dâr mêres wâre: 3705
what there of-tidings were:

„ich bin ein ellender man,
„I am an exiled man,

nâ mîner spîse môz ich gân.
after my food must I go.

nû sage mir, trûch hêrre mîn,
now tell me, dear lord mine,

ich bin ein arm pilegrîm
I am a poor pilgrim

unde vare durch die rîche
and fare through the realms

vîl gâmerlîche.
very pitifully.

sô môz der nôthafter man
so must the needy man

dicke zô hove gân;
often to court go;

dâr vrâgit man den wallêre
there asks one the pilgrim

gerne nûmâre.
gladly tidings.

sagistû mir icht durch goch,
(if)-tellest-thou me anything for God,

des wirt dir wole gelônôt“.
for-that is to-thee well rewarded“.

Dô sprach der helt tuginthaft:
Then spoke the hero virtuous:

„ich sage der wunders kraft.
„I tell to-thee of-wonders abundance.

hî zô Constantînopole,
here at Constantinople,

der vil mêrin burge,
the very famous castle,

was ein recke hêre
was a warrior noble

unde plach grôzir êrin;
and practiced great honors;

daz schînit mir immir an,
that shows on-me ever on,

her hât mer michil guot getân.
he has to-me great good done.

ime wâren die vursten alle holt.
to-him were the princes all devoted.

her gaf in daz kreftige golt,
he gave to-them the abundant gold,

daz ie sichein man
that ever any man

zô desir werlde gewan.
in this world won.

sîn hof stûnt offin vromelîche
his court stood open splendidly

den armin unde den rîchen,
to-the poor and to-the rich,

die vundin an deme gôtin
they found in the good-one

vatir unde môtir.
father and mother.

sîn wille was zô gebine.
his will was to giving.

her nerôchte nicht zô lebine
he cared not to live

mit sicheinis scazzis ubersite:
with any treasure's excess:

dâr hetter urloge mite,
there had-he war with,

her swante in nacht unde tac.
he wasted it night and day.

swer in dûsint pfunde bat,
whoever him thousand pounds asked,

her gab sie ime alsô ringe
he gave them to-him as lightly

alsô zwêne penninge.
as two pennies.

beide, hêrre, ich wil dir sagin,
wait, lord, I will to-thee tell,

war umbe ich die rede hân irhaven“.
what for I the speech have raised“.

Rôther [der] gerne virnam,
Rother [it] gladly perceived,

waz her selve hette getân.
what he self had done.

dô sprach der rîche mêre:
then spoke the rich famous-one:

‚ich sage dir von deme hêrren.
‚I tell to-thee of the lord.

her was ôtmôte
he was humble

unde plach der bezzistin gôte,
and practiced the best goodness,

die ie sichein man
that ever any man

zô der werlde gewan.
in the world won.

icht nelevet nichein zunge,
there lives no tongue,

die daz gesagen kunde,
which that tell could,

waz her tuginde hât begân.
what he of-virtue has performed.

her bereit die ellenden man,
he equipped the exiled men,

arme kint heiz her vazzin unde baden,
poor children bade he clothe and bathe,

vor sich ûffe den tisc tragin.
before himself upon the table carry.

her gaben al daz her gewan;
he gave all that he won;

her nerôchte wer iz nam.
he cared-not who it took.

her vôrte sulke degine,
he led such thanes,

daz under deme himele
that under the heaven

nie nichein virtriven man
never any banished man

sô grôze hereschaf gewan.
so great host won.

Constantîne deme rîchen
to-Constantine the rich

half er vrumiclîche
helped he valiantly

von grôzin nôtin.
from great distresses.

her vînc Ymelôtin,
he captured Ymelot,

der was ein heidin vreislîch,
he was a heathen terrible,

deme dienten tagelîch
to-him served daily

zwêne unde sivenzic koninge
two and seventy kings

von wôster Babilônie.
of desert Babylon.

dô kârte unse gedigine
then turned our household

vrôlîche widere.
joyfully back.

her sante den wîgant
he sent the fighter

zô botin in daz lant,
as messenger into the land,

daz her den vrouwen sagete
that he to-the ladies should-tell

waz her gevrumit havite.
what he accomplished had.

hie zû Constantînopole
here at Constantinople

in der mêrin burge
in the famous castle

was daz scône wîf,
was the fair woman,

die ie gewan den lîb.
who ever won the life.

dar umbe hetter arbeit
there for had-he hardship

unde irwarb mit sînir hovischeit,
and gained with his courtliness,

daz die magit lossam
that the maid lovely

ir vater inran,
her father escaped,

êr sie wider quêmin.
before they back came.

dê heter ime zô lône
her had-he to-himself for reward

unde vôrte westert over mere.
and led westward over sea.

daz was der koninc Rôthere
that was the king Rother

van Rôme, ein tuginthafter man,
of Rome, a virtuous man,

unde hât uns al lieb getân.
and has to-us all love done.

nu virnim, guote pilegrîm,
now hear, good pilgrim,

wê ime des gelônit sî“.
how to-him of-that rewarded be“.

Rôther wolde dannin gân,
Rother would thence go,

dô sprach der helit lossam:
then spoke the hero lovely:

„beite, wallêre.
„wait, pilgrim.

ic sage der starke mêre.
I tell to-thee hard tidings.

alse mîn hêrre widir quam,
when my lord back came,

ime inran der heidiniske man.
from-him escaped the heathenish man.

dô sante der koninc Constantîn
then sent the king Constantine

botin nâ der tochter sîn,
messengers after the daughter his,

sie stâlin sie deme koninge Rôthere
they stole her from-the king Rother

unde vôrtin sie widir over mere.
and led her back over sea.

dô reit der koninc Ymelôt
then rode the king Ymelot

unde vôrte manigin helit gôt
and led many-a hero good

har zô Kriechen in daz lant
hither to Greece into the land

unde stifte roub unde brant
and wrought robbery and burning

unde vienc Constantîne,
and captured Constantine,

den leiden hêrren mînin.
the hateful lord mine.

dô lôste Constantîn sînen lît
then ransomed Constantine his limb

unde gaf daz Rôtheres wîf
and gave the Rother's woman

deme vreislîchen koninge
to-the terrible king

van wôster Babilônie.
of desert Babylon.

des sune sal sie nemin hînacht
whose son shall her take tonight

alse dû selbe sên macht.
as thou self see mayst.

zô Constantînopole in der stat
at Constantinople in the city

sîn mit grôzer heres kraft
are with great host's strength

drîzic koninge
thirty kings

van wôster Babilônie.
of desert Babylon.

dâr stât Rôtheres wîf
there stands Rother's woman

unde quelit den êrlîchin lîb:
and torments the honorable body:

van herzeleide daz ist.
from heart-sorrow that is.

nû sê der waldendiger Crist,
now see-to-it the all-ruling Christ,

der Aspriânen sante,
who Asprian should-send,

ê dise tac wante“.
before this day turned“.

dê hêrren sprâchin: „âmen,
the lords spoke: „amen,

dat stê an gotis genâdin“.
that stand in God's graces“.

die recke[n] dravite balde
the warrior trotted quickly

widir zô deme walde,
back to the forest,

heize weininde,
hotly weeping,

sîne hande wringinde.
his hands wringing.

dô klagite der helit guot
then lamented the hero good

der juncvrouwen nôt.
the young-lady's distress.

Rôther gienc in dê stat.
Rother went into the city.

Berker sînin hêrren bat,
Berchter his lord begged,

daz her wurbe gewerlîche.
that he should-deal warily.

Constantîn der rîche
Constantine the rich

saz mit grôzin kreftin
sat with great powers

zô einir wirtschefte
at a feast

3840 ûf einim êrlîchen sal.
upon an honorable hall.

dâr was michil schal
there was great clamor

vor den rîchen kuningen
before the rich kings

von wôstir Babilônie.
of desert Babylon.

Rôther quam mit listin
Rother came with cunning

3845 zô Constantînis tiske;
to Constantine's table;

deme saz bî [der sun] ein koninc heiz Basilistium
him sat by [the son] a king called Basilistium

unde was Ymelôtis sun.
and was Ymelot's son.

bî deme saz Rôtheres wîb
by him sat Rother's woman

unde qualite ir lîb.
and tormented her body.

3850 Dô sprach Constantîn:
Then spoke Constantine:

„nû swîc, tochter mîn,
„now be-silent, daughter mine,

mir troumite nachte von der,
to-me dreamed at-night of thee,

des saltû wol gelouben mir,
that shalt-thou well believe me,

wê ein valke quâme
how a falcon should-come

gevlogin von Rôme
flown from Rome

unde vôrte dich widir over mere“.
and should-lead thee back over sea“.

dô slouf Rôther
then slipped Rother

under tisc unde sîne man,
under table and his men,

daz man ir nicheine war nenam.
that one of-them no heed took.

dô hôrter al daz Constantîn
then heard-he all that Constantine

redite mit den gestiche sîn.
spoke with the guests his.

Die heideniskin kuninge
The heathenish kings

vrouwetin sich der menige
rejoiced themselves of-the host

unde sprâchin: „quême Rôther,
and spoke: „should-come Rother,

er wurde irtrenkit in dem mere
he would-become drowned in the sea

odir bôslîche virlorn,
or wretchedly lost,

daz wâre Widolte zorn“.
that were to-Widolt anger“.

dô sprach die kuningîn:
then spoke the queen:

„owî, gesentin unse trechtîn
„alas, should-send our Lord

under ûch sô rîchin,
among you so mighty-ones,

hê worde etlîcheme,
he would-become to-some-one,

daz hê in sivin nachtin
that he in seven nights

virsmerze nîne mochte“.
get-over not-at-all might“.

Rôther sat nâher
Rother sat nearer

3875 ûffe den vôzschêmil
upon the footstool

unde nam ein guldîn vingerîn
and took a golden ring

unde gaf der koningîn.
and gave to-the queen.

dâr stûnt gebôchstavet ane
there stood lettered on

des rîchen koningis name.
the rich king's name.

3880 alsin die vrouwe gelas,
when-it the lady read,

daz Rôther in deme sale was,
that Rother in the hall was,

dô lachite die gôte
then laughed the good-one

unde sagetiz ir môtir,
and told-it to-her mother,

daz in von Bâre
that to-them from Bari

3885 der kuninc kumen wâre.
the king come were.

Daz lachin Constantîn gesach,
The laughing Constantine saw,

nû mugit ir hôren wie her sprach:
now may you hear how he spoke:

„wol dich, trût tochter mîn,
„well-for thee, dear daughter mine,

nû vrouwit sich der vatir dîn“.
now rejoices himself the father thine“.

dô sprach die vrouwe êrlîch:
then spoke the lady honorable:

„daz ich ie gezornte widir dich,
„that I ever raged against thee,

daz rûwit mich sêre.
that rues me sorely.

ich negetôz nimmir mêre“.
I do-it never more“.

dô sprach Ymelôt:
then spoke Ymelot:

„vrouwe, ir liegit âne nôt.
„lady, you lie without need.

ich wêne uns ûwer lachin
I believe to-us your laughing

herzeleit icht mache
heart-sorrow anything should-make

unde wringinde die hende,
and wringing the hands,

swanne iz nimit ende.
when it takes end.

wir hôtin unsich wole;
we guard us well;

hie sint in deme sale
here are in the hall

der leidin spehêre
the hateful spies

des kuningis von Bâre.
of-the king of Bari.

swer mir des nîne gelouvet,
whoever me of-it not-at-all believes,
deme gevich mîn houbit“.
to-him give-I my head“.

Dô sprach Ymelôtis sune,
Then spoke Ymelot's son,
der koninc Basilistium:
the king Basilistium:
„ich sach ein guot vingerîn,
„I saw a good ring,
daz gaf dîn tochtir, Constantîn,
that gave thy daughter, Constantine,
der aldin kuningin.
to-the old queen.
Rôthere is hie inne,
Rother is here in,
der koninc von Rôme,
the king of Rome,
swie her here quême,
however he hither should-come,
des saltû wole gewis sîn“.
of-that shalt-thou well certain be“.
dô sprach der koninc Constantîn:
then spoke the king Constantine:
„ich hêze zwelf mînir man
„I bid twelve of-my men
vor des salis ture stân,
before the hall's door stand,
daz sie rechte irkinnin
that they rightly should-recognize
die wir haven hie inne.
whom we have here in.
is Rôther dar under,
(if)-is Rother there among,

den have wir schîre vunden.
him have we quickly found.

wolder aber her vore gân,
would-he however hither forth go,

daz wêre ime êre getân,
that were to-him honor done,

ê wir den koninc rîchen
before we the king rich

sôchtin lasterlîche
sought shamefully

alse einin vluchtigin dieb.
like a fleeing thief.

iz nist ouch sînis rechtis niet,
it is also of-his right not,

swâ man sîn inne werde,
wherever one of-him aware should-become,

daz her sich icht berche".
that he himself at-all should-hide".

XIX · THE GALLOWS PREPARED

Berchter, duke of Meran, urges that they go forward trusting in God. Rother shows himself, and Basilistium and Constantine condemn him. By a ruse he asks to be hanged on the hill before the wood where his army lies, and he is bound. The young queen and the city mourn, and Arnold, whom Rother once enriched, arms five thousand men, follows the heathen host out, and falls on it.

Rôther der rîche
Rother the rich

beriet sich heimelîche.
counseled himself secretly.

dô sprach der herzoge von Merân:
then spoke the duke of Meran:

„wir sulin hie vore gân
„we shall here forth go

in êre des himiliskin koningis
in honor of-the heavenly king

unde alles sînis heris,
and all his host,

daz her uns beide behôde
that he us both should-guard

durch sîn ôtmôde
for his humility

von der heidenschefte,
from the heathendom,

die mit sînir krefte
who with his strength

Moysen heiz gân
Moses bade go

durch daz rôte mere vreissam
through the red sea terrible

mit der israhêlischen diet;
with the Israelite folk;

dâr nelevet ein barin niet
there lives a child not

an des meres grunde.
on the sea's ground.

got der hât gebundin
God he has bound

beide ovil unde guot,
both evil and good,

swannez widir ime duot.
whenever-it against him does.

iedoch sî wir reckin,
yet are we warriors,

widir unsin trechtin
toward our Lord

beide lûtir unde lîcht,
both pure and light,

her inlêzit uns under wege nit.
he leaves us on way not.

in sante Giljes namen
in saint Giles's name

sô wil ich endelîche vore gân“
so will I resolutely forth go“

sprach der herzoge von Merân.
spoke the duke of Meran.

dô hôvin sich bit liste
then raised themselves with cunning

die hêrren vonme tiske.
the lords from-the table.

Rôthere dô vore gienc:
Rother then forth went:

„ich bin sicherlîche hîr.
„I am surely here.

mich scouwe wer sô wille“.
me look-at whoever so will“.

die rîchen koninge alle
the rich kings all

drouweden ime an den lîf;
threatened him at the life;

daz galt etlîcher sint.
that paid many-a-one afterward.

Dô sprach Ymelôtis sune,
Then spoke Ymelot's son,

der koninc Basilistium:
the king Basilistium:

„ich wille dich heizen, Rôther,
„I will thee bid, Rother,

irtrenkin in deme mere.
drown in the sea.

dû vêngist den vater mîn,
thou capturedst the father mine,

daz gât dir an den lîf dîn.
that goes to-thee at the life thine.

dû môst verloren werdin,
thou must lost become,

swie dû wilt irsterven".
however thou wilt die".

„introuwen" sprach Constantîn,
„in-truth" spoke Constantine,

„hê sal ovele irstervet sîn".
„he shall evilly died be".

dô sprach der koninc rîche
then spoke the king rich

harde wîslîche:
very wisely:

„wêr mir nû der lîf,
„were to-me now the life,

sone mochte ich doch genesen nit.
so might I yet survive not.

sies dû jenez geberge stân
seest thou yonder hill stand

vor deme walde lossam?
before the forest lovely?

dâr wil ich hangin.
there will I hang.

nu gebûet dînen mannin,
now command thy men,

daz sie der helfen dar zô.
that they to-thee help there to.

dû salt mer selve den dôit tôn;
thou shalt to-me self the death do;

iz ist in mîme lande recht“
it is in my land right“

sprach Rôther der guode knecht,
spoke Rother the good knight,

„sowaz einen vorsten geschê,
„whatever to-a prince should-happen,

daz iz der ander ane sê.
that it the other on should-see.

hie ist ein michil minie,
here is a great host,

drîzic koninge,
thirty kings,

die kumin dir alle
they come to-thee all

unde hânt mich in dem scalle,
and have me in the clamor,

daz ist dir êre getân.
that is to-thee honor done.

[dô gienc Ymelôtis man]
[*then went Ymelot's men*]

dû hâst dich wol gerochin“.
thou hast thee well avenged“.

daz wart durch list gesprochen:
that was through cunning spoken:

dâr hê sich bat hân,
where he himself bade hang,

dâr lach sîn here nâin,
there lay his host near,

hê zeichenede rechte die stat,
he signified rightly the place,

dâr die riese Aspriân lach.
where the giant Asprian lay.

Ymelôt heiz die koninge
Ymelot bade the kings

von wôster Babilônie
of desert Babylon

Rôthere vân,
Rother capture,

hê woldin selve hân.
he would-him self have.

„introuwen“ sprach Constantîn,
„in-truth“ spoke Constantine,

„des willich helfe wesen dîn,
„of-that will-I help be thine,

daz hê uns icht inrinne.
that he us not should-escape.

jenir alde mit deme barde,
yonder old-one with the beard,

die môwit die lûde harte
he troubles the people hard

mit herverten ovir lant.
with war-journeys over land.

nû hâ wir sie alle samt,
now have we them all together,

sone vreiskin die Romêre
so learn the Romans

lîchte nimmir mêre,
easily never more,

war die koninc sî kumin,
where the king be come,

oder wie her sîn ende have genomin“.
or how he his end have taken“.

Dâr nâ den stundin
There after the hours

Rôthere wart gebundin.
Rother was bound.

daz dâten Ymelôtis man.
that did Ymelot's men.

wie harte trûren began
how hard to-mourn began

die junge koninginne
the young queen

unde virwandelôte die sinne
and changed the wits

von grôzir herzeleide.
from great heart-sorrow.

wôfin unde weinin
wailing and weeping

hôven die vrouwin
raised the ladies

mit vliezenden ougin.
with flowing eyes.

dâ dorfte nieman vrâgan.
there needed no-one ask.

dô klagete wîf unde man
then lamented woman and man

alle Rôtheres nôt;
all Rother's distress;

sint half der rîche got
afterward helped the rich God

Arnolde, daz her in benam
to-Arnold, that he him took

deme koninge vreissam.
from-the king terrible.

Rôtheris hâhin
Rother's hanging

irschal sô wîtine mâre
resounded so widely tidings

zô Constantînopole,
at Constantinople,

der vil mêren burge,
the very famous castle,

den kônin wîgandin
to-the bold fighters

ûz van manigin landin.
out from many lands.

die liefin weinande
they ran weeping

eine strâze zô tale.
a street to valley.

michil was der ir schal.
great was there their clamor.

sie sprâchin: „waldindiger got,
they spoke: „all-ruling God,

war umbe hâs dû des virhengôt,
what for hast thou it permitted,

daz her hie gebunden stât,
that he here bound stands,

der unsich al generet hât“?
who us all saved has“?

Do hette gebûwit harte
Then had settled very-well

mit dûsint marken,
with thousand marks,

die ime Rôthere gaf —
which to-him Rother gave—

ime dieneten in der stat
to-him served in the city

sivin hundrit lossam,
seven hundred lovely,

die wârin mit handin sîne man —
who were with hands his men—

der heiz grâve Arnolt.
he was-called count Arnold.

her hette silver unde golt,
he had silver and gold,

des was der helit milde.
of-that was the hero generous.

zwelf hundrit schilde
twelve hundred shields

brâchter zô deme schalle
brought-he to the clamor

unde bat die hêrren alle,
and begged the lords all,

daz sie lôsten mit iren handen
that they should-free with their hands

Rôtheren ûzen bandin.
Rother out-of bonds.

„nû stât her gevangin
„now stands he captured

unde wirt her hûde gehangin,
and (if)-is he today hanged,

sone virwinde wir in niet.
so get-over we it not.

in nemach ouch die rômiske diet
him can also the Roman folk

nimmir mêre virklagin.
never more lament-enough.

ir nehôrtit nimmir [mêr] gesagen
you heard never [more] tell

von sînen genôze [in]selden.
of his peer [un]seldom.

wir sulin ime hûte geldin,
we shall to-him today repay,

daz der tugenthafter man
that the virtuous man

van deme armôte unsich nam.
from the poverty us took.

nû nâr, gôten knechte,
now on, good knights,

lât it an mînen trechtin
leave it to my Lord

unde helfit ime vromiclîche.
and help him valiantly.

ir virdînet daz himilrîche“
you earn the heaven-realm“

sprach Arnolt ein gôt knecht,
spoke Arnold a good knight,

„ja vôre wir godis recht.
„yea lead we God's right.

swer hie hûte wirt irsclagin,
whoever here today is slain,

des sêle sal genâde havin.
whose soul shall grace have.

die heiden sul wir slân.
the heathens shall we slay.

dar denke Sancte Ylien an
there think Saint Giles on

unde sanctus Johannes der toufêre,
and saint John the baptist,

daz Rôthere wêre
that Rother were

der aller tûriste man
the of-all most-precious man

der ie konincrîche gewan“.
who ever kingdom won“.

Dô scluffin die recken
Then slipped the warriors

in stâlîne roche.
into steel coats.

sie wunnin ein hêrlîche schare,
they won a lordly troop,

vunf dûsint wole gare.
five thousand well ready.

die woldin alle den lîb geven,
they would all the life give,

sê nelôsten Rôthere daz leven.
they unless-should-free for-Rother the life.

Sic huoven mit grôzer menige
Themselves raised with great host

drîzic koninge
thirty kings

von wôster Babilônie
of desert Babylon

ûzer Constantînopole.
out-of Constantinople.

dô vôrte der Ymelôtis sune,
then led the Ymelot's son,

der koninc Basilistium,
the king Basilistium,

Rôthere gevangin
Rother captured

unde wolden haven irhangin.
and would-him have hanged.

michel was der ir b[a]racht.
great was there their noise.

sie vôrden in ûz der stat,
they led him out-of the city,

wol zênzic dûsint Valewin
well twenty thousand Falwen

mit in zô deme galgin,
with them to the gallows,

unde alsô manigin heidin.
and as many heathens.

dô was deme recken leide:
then was to-the warrior sorrowful:

Arnolt der wîgant,
Arnold the fighter,

eine kefsin her an daz sper bant,
a reliquary he to the spear bound,

die her in deme tôme nam.
which he in the cathedral took.

sie rêfen unsin trechtin an
they called our Lord on

unde dravetin in ûz der stat nâ.
and trotted them out-of the city after.

in was ûffe daz velt gâ
to-them was upon the field haste

mit vunf dûsint mannin
with five thousand men

in snêwîzen brunien.
in snow-white byrnies.

Alse Ymelôt daz gesach,
As Ymelot that saw,

nû mûdir hôren wie her sprach:
now may-you hear how he spoke:

„woch geniz sint die recken,
„oh yonder are the warriors,

die woldin uns irsreckin.
who would us frighten.

an den gerechich mînin zorn.
on them avenge-I my anger.

sie havent ouch den lîb virlorn".
they have also the life lost".

Die heiden begunden nâhen
The heathens began to-near

dâr man Rôthere solde hâhen.
where one Rother should hang.

dô riefin sie allenthalven:
then called they on-all-sides:

„nû richdit ûf den galgin“!
„now set up the gallows“!

daz irbarmôte die recken sêre;
that pitied the warriors sorely;

ir weinte michel mêre,
of-them wept many more,

dan er ê tâte.
than they before did.

dô was her in starker nôte.
then was he in hard distress.

Arnolt, der kône man,
Arnold, the bold man,

rief die ellenden an:
called the exiles on:

„nû hôret, gôte knechte,
„now hear, good knights,

war umbe wir hûte vechtin.
what for we today fight.

uns sint gebotin zwei lôn
to-us are offered two rewards

(wî mugin iz deste gerner tôn):
(we may it the-more gladly do):

daz eine ist sichirlîche
the one is surely

daz schône himelrîche:
the fair heaven-realm:

swê hie ligit tôt,
whoever here lies dead,

des sêle wirt geledigôt
whose soul is freed

in daz wunnichlîche leven.
into the delightful life.

waz mochte dâr bezzeris sîn gegevin?
what might there better be given?

daz ander ist alsô getân:
the other is so made:

genderder den getrûwin man,
(if)-save-you the faithful man,

er vôrit ûch in sîn lant
he leads you into his land

unde behalt unsich alle samt".
and keeps us all together".

dô trôveten ime die ougin.
then dripped to-him the eyes.

mit rechtime gelouven
with right faith

bestûndin sie die heidinschaft
attacked they the heathendom

unde sclôgin ir eine michele kraft.
and slew of-them a great multitude.

XX · THE BATTLE AT THE GALLOWS

Arnold's men fall on the heathens with a relic before them, and Arnold frees Rother, Berchter, and Lupold. Lupold sounds the horn, and Asprian, Widolt, and Wolfrat burst from the wood. The heathens are routed, Erwin avenges his father, and Ymelot is sent home; a fleeing minstrel tells Constantine that Basilistium is hanged. Asprian forbids Grimme to burn Constantinople for the relics within, and the giants throw away their staves, Widolt in fear of God.

Daz heidine wîcgerœ̈ste
The heathen war-gear

daz was vile vaste.
that was very firm.

sie trougin hornîn gewant.
they wore horn clothing.

die kefsin man over bant
the reliquary one over bound

vor den kônin reckin.
before the bold warriors.

sie hôven sich gegin der dicke.
they raised themselves toward the throng.

daz heilichdûm vôr ze vorderôst.
the relic fared at foremost.

sie vuchtin ûf den godis trôst
they fought upon the God's comfort

mit sô getâneme harme,
with so made harm,

daz in vor deme arme
that to-them before the arm

nicht inmochte bestân,
nothing could stand,

iz nemôste alliz undergân.
it unless-must all go-under.

Die heidenen unde die Valewen
The heathens and the Falwen

wichin von deme galgin
gave-way from the gallows

durch die michelen nôt.
through the great distress.

dâr lach manich helet dôt.
there lay many-a hero dead.

Arnolt, der wîgant,
Arnold, the fighter,

gaf daz zeichen ûzer hant
gave the sign out-of hand

unde zouch ein swert daz hiez Mâl.
and drew a sword that was-called Mal.

iz inwas negein stâl
there was no steel

sô hart noch sô vast,
so hard nor so firm,

iz nemôste bresten.
it unless-must break.

des nâmen von sînen henden
of-that took from his hands

der koninge sesse ir ende.
of-the kings six their end.

swaz hê der andren ane quam,
whatever he of-the others on came,

den tede hê sicherlîche sam,
to-him did he surely likewise,

biz hê in den hêrren benam
until he from-them the lord took

unde Berkeren von Merân
and Berchter of Meran

unde Lûppoldin,
and Lupold,

den sie dâr hân woldin.
whom they there hang would.

die bôch newille uns missesagen,
the books will-not us mis-tell,

iz nemochte ire nieman achte havin.
it could of-them no-one count have.

die dâr wâren schadehaft,
who there were damaged,

si jâhen iz dâde die godes kraft.
they said it did the God's strength.

Alse Rôther gesach,
As Rother saw,

dat Arnolt bî ime was,
that Arnold by him was,

dô sprach die koninc rîche
then spoke the king rich

harde vromelîche:
very valiantly:

„snîtâ, kône wîgant,
„cut, bold fighter,

mî die bande von der hant!
to-me the bonds from the hand!

unde geblâs ich mîn horin,
and (if)-blow I my horn,

ir wirt michil mê verlorn
of-them is much more lost

dan ir noch sî getân.
than of-them yet be done.

uns kumit der helet Aspriân“.
to-us comes the hero Asprian“.

dô die recken daz vernâmen,
when the warriors that perceived,

wie vrô si alle wâren!
how glad they all were!

in was zô deme storme vile lief,
to-them was to the storm very dear,

si nedâchten an die vlucht nit,
they thought on the flight not,

die kônin wîgande.
the bold fighters.

Dô stûndin in deme sande
Then stood on the sand

dannoch siven koninge
yet seven kings

mit achzich dûsint menie.
with eighty thousand host.

lûde dô ein horn scal
loud then a horn sounded

over berich unde dale,
over hill and dale,

daz blês Rôtheres man
that blew Rother's man

Lûppolt von Meylân.
Lupold of Milan.

lûte rief Aspriân:
loud called Asprian:

„mîn hêre ist weizgot bestân.
„my lord is God-knows attacked.

wol ûf, helet Wolfrât!
well up, hero Wolfrat!

ich wêne dînen neven nôt bestât.
I believe thy nephew distress besets.

nû wil ich Rôtheres gedagin,
now will I of-Rother keep-silent,

inde wirt Lûppolt irslagin,
and (if)-is Lupold slain,

hê mochte uns imer rouwin,
he might us ever grieve,

hê ist gruntveste allir trouwe".
he is foundation of-all faith".

Widolt gâchete balde
Widolt hastened quickly

ûz deme walde.
out-of the forest.

wie die halsberch klanc,
how the hauberk rang,

dâr hê over die strûke spranc,
where he over the shrubs sprang,

unde der helet Aspriân!
and the hero Asprian!

die zwelef riesen vreissan
the twelve giants terrible

liefen rû inde slech.
ran rough and smooth.

dâr volgete manich gôt knecht
there followed many-a good knight

deme Tengelingêre;
the Tengelinger;

hê brâchte ein here mêre
he brought a host famous

ûz deme walde lossam,
out-of the forest lovely,

daz wâren Rôtheres man.
that were Rother's men.

dâr gâchete manich wîgant
there hastened many-a fighter

wal gewâphenet over lant.
well armed over land.

Der luden wart allinthalven.
Of-the people was on-all-sides.

sie lôsten in von deme galgin
they freed him from the gallows

unde hôrten die erden bîven.
and heard the earth quake.

dar liefen dô mit nîde
there ran then with spite

zwêne riesen vreissam:
two giants terrible:

der eine was Aspriân,
the one was Asprian,

der ander was Widolt;
the other was Widolt;

verre lûchte ime daz golt
far shone to-him the gold

von des skildis rande.
from the shield's rim.

Ymelôt irkande
Ymelot recognized

Rôtheres sinne:
Rother's wits:

hê wolde gerne intrinnen.
he would gladly escape.

dâr wart die vlucht vile grôz.
there was the flight very great.

der wint von Aspriâne dôz.
the wind from Asprian roared.

Rôther gienc ingegin in,
Rother went toward them,

hê sprach: „kône helt, virnim,
he spoke: „bold hero, hear,

die dort vor Lûppolde havin,
who there before Lupold hold,

den nesolin die riesin niuwet scaden.
them shall the giants not-at-all harm.

mir haven die selve hêrren
to-me have the same lords

geholfin grôzer êrin.
helped of-great honors.

in trouwen, ich was gevangin,
in truth, I was captured,

mich wolden hân irhangin
me would have hanged

die vreislîche koninge
the terrible kings

von wôster Babilônie.
of desert Babylon.

wirt dâr icht widir getân,
(if)-is there anything against done,

daz lâz ich alsô bestân“.
that let I so stand“.

lûde rief dô Grimme:
loud called then Grimme:

„sine koment niemer hinne“.
„they come never hence“.

Die riesen liefen alle in daz wal.
The giants ran all into the slaughter.

dâr wart des heres michil scal.
there became of-the host great clamor.

dâr sclûch der helet Aspriân
there slew the hero Asprian

alliz daz hê ane quam.
all that he on came.

Widolt nicht insprach,
Widolt nothing spoke,

biz ime die stange zebrach.
until to-him the staff broke.

dô zouch der grimmige man
then drew the grim man

ein wâfen daz was vreissan.
a weapon that was terrible.

dô lâgen ûf den dôden
then lay upon the dead

die tûere mar verscrodin.
the precious steeds hewn.

von den wundin vlôz daz blût,
from the wounds flowed the blood,

dâ Wolfrât der helet gôt
when Wolfrat the hero good

zô deme volcwîge quam
to the folk-battle came

unde andere Rôtheres man.
and other Rother's men.

die kônin wîgande
the bold fighters

die vromeden mit iren handen
they performed with their hands

daz man imer môz sagen,
what one ever must tell,

wande wir daz orkunde haven
for we the witness have

von den alden hêrren,
from the old lords,

die nâch vertrieven wâren.
who after driven-out were.

Sich hetten die siven koninge
Themselves had the seven kings

besundret von der menie
separated from the host

unde vluwen vreislîche dannen.
and fled terribly thence.

Erwîn rande ir einin an
Erwin rode of-them one at

unde sclôcht den selven vâlant
and struck the same devil

durch sîn hornîn gewant
through his horn clothing

von der aslin biz an den sadel.
from the shoulder down to the saddle.

dâ rach der helet sînin vader.
there avenged the hero his father.

ir wurdin vunve irhangen;
of-them became five hanged;

iz was in ovele irgangin.
it was to-them ill gone.

sich hôf der uncristine val.
itself raised the un-Christian fall.

die siechen lâgen in den wal;
the wounded lay in the slaughter;

swâ sigein wê rief,
wherever any woe cried,

Widolt in ane lief
Widolt him on ran

unde trat eme in den munt,
and trod him in the mouth,

der newart nimer gesunt.
he became never sound.

sie môstin durch nôt dagen
they must of necessity be-silent

unde beiden dûme[n]s tagis,
and await doom's day,

daz dâr nieman genas.
that there no-one survived.

Ymelôt, des die reise was,
Ymelot, whose the journey was,

den hêz man hine lâzen
him bade one thither let

varen sîne strâzen,
fare his roads,

daz hê dâr heime mochte sagen,
that he there at-home might tell,

wer ime daz volc hette irsclagin.
who to-him the folk had slain.

Dô wâren der spilemanne
Then were of-the minstrels

wol hundret mit in gegangin,
well hundred with them gone,

die heiz der helet Grimme
them bade the hero Grimme

durch Ymelôtis willen
for Ymelot's sake

bit den zugeweichen staven
with the forked staves

vaste recken unde slân.
firmly stretch and beat.

dô vlô ein spileman,
then fled a minstrel,

die Widolden ouch hie vore intran,
who Widolt also here before escaped,

vor Constantînen den rîchen
before Constantine the rich

harde hasticlîche.
very hastily.

dô vrâgeten die vrosten alle
then asked the princes all

von deme grôzen scalle,
about the great clamor,

der dâ ze velde wêre.
which there in field were.

„ich sage û starke mêre,
„I tell to-you hard tidings,

sich hât irlediget der hafte;
himself has freed the prisoner;

sie rîdent here mit heris krafte.
they ride hither with host's strength.

swer ungerne hange,
whoever unwillingly hangs,

der nesizze nicht zô lange.
he sit not too long.

dâr gevet der helet Widolt
there gives the hero Widolt

beide spîse unde solt
both food and pay

den heidenischen reckin.
to-the heathenish warriors.

ich wart dâr nider gestrecket,
I was there down stretched,

ich wart bevilt unde bescoren,
I was flayed and shorn,

ich hette nâch den lîf verlorn.
I had nearly the life lost.

ich wil iz û wârlîche sagen:
I will it to-you truly tell:

die tûrlîchen bûlslage
the precious bruise-blows

gaf Widolt mit der stangin.
gave Widolt with the staff.

Basilistium ist irhangin.
Basilistium is hanged.

iz negât dâr niemanne an den vôz,
it goes there to-no-one at the foot,

man dôt ime gare des lîves bôz.
one does to-him wholly of-the life amends.

der tûevel nimet och mir den sin,
the devil takes also from-me the sense,

daz ich sô hovebâre bin
that I so courtly am

unde och sô lange hie stân.
and also so long here stand.

nû vrâget ouch einin andren man.
now ask also an other man.

swer hûde wirt begriffin,
whoever today is caught,

der ist immir beswichin".
he is ever betrayed".

die hûeven sich ze vluchtin.
they raised themselves to flight.

dô saz in leiden trechtin
then sat in hateful thoughts

Constantîn der rîche
Constantine the rich

ime harde lasterlîche.
to-him very shamefully.

Dô die wîgande
When the fighters

von rômischen lande
of Roman land

ûz deme sturme giengin
out-of the storm went

unde die ros geveingen,
and the horses caught,

dô hette Wolfrâtis zorn
then had Wolfrat's anger

gemachit blûtige spor[n],
made bloody spurs,

dîfe gerwundin;
deep wounds;

manigen ungesundin
many-an unsound-one

durch den helm verscrôtin.
through the helm hewn.

minigin helt gôtin
many-a hero good

vromete der wîgant
dispatched the fighter

mit sîner ellenthafter hant
with his valorous hand

ze leiden tagedingin.
to hateful assemblies.

er was von Tengelingin,
he was of Tengelingen,

der dûresten diete,
of-the most-precious folk,

rîche ân overmûde,
rich without arrogance,

mit wîsdûmis sinne.
with wisdom's sense.

der lîz ouch sîme kunne,
he left also to-his kin,

daz tô imer vorsten namen hât
that it ever princes' name has

die wîle daz dise werelt stât.
the while that this world stands.

Dô gînc der herzoge von Merân
Then went the duke of Meran

vor den grâven Arnolde stân
before the count Arnold stand

unde mit ime Wolfrât,
and with him Wolfrat,

der alliz guot verdienet hât,
who all good earned has,

unde Erwîn, der sich ie vore nam,
and Erwin, who himself ever forward took,

swâ man vromicheide began
wherever one valor began

vrô unde spâde;
early and late;

hê konde wol gerâden
he could well counsel

eime gôtin knechte,
a good knight,

daz ime sîn dinc rechte
that to-him his affair rightly

beleif unz an sîn alder.
remained until to his age.

den mochte man wole behaldin.
him might one well keep.

nâch den gînc ein wîs man
after them went a wise man

Lûppolt von Meylân,
Lupold of Milan,

der hatte in sîme lande
who had in his land

gewonit âne scande
dwelt without disgrace

unde was durchnechte
and was thoroughly-good

bit zuchten ân overbrechte.
with breeding without arrogance.

hê wiste wol ze rechte.
he knew well at right.

en hetten gôde knechte
him had good knights

gevôrt biz hê swert nam.
led until he sword took.

Rôther unde sîne man
Rother and his men

bodin Arnolde,
offered Arnold,

of hê iz nemen wolde,
if he it take would,

sie wêrin ime ungeswichin
they should-be to-him unfailing

zô allen sînen sachen.
in all his matters.

dô leveter âne sorge.
then lived-he without care.

daz heter irworven
that had-he gained

in deme volcwîge
in the folk-battle

mit sînen kônin lîve.
with his bold body.

von dû wirt iz ime lîchte gôt,
from that becomes it to-him easily good,

swer sô icht vromelîchis getôt.
whoever so anything valiant does.

Sich beriet der helet Aspriân,
Himself counseled the hero Asprian,

wie iz Constantîne mochte irgân.
how it to-Constantine might go.

„dâr môz hê“ sprach Grimme,
„there must he“ spoke Grimme,

„in der burich brinnen.
„in the castle burn.

nû neme wir die tochter sîn,
now take we the daughter his,

nâ der wir gevaren sîn,
after whom we fared are,

unde tragen daz vûr an.
and carry the fire on.

Widolt sal vor die dure stân:
Widolt shall before the door stand:

swer dan dar ûz gât,
whoever then there out goes,

wie wol uns dê gerichit dat!
how well for-us he judges that!

virmissit sîn der helet gôt,
(if)-misses him the hero good,

wir lâzenz immir âne nôt“.
we leave-it ever without need“.

„entrouwin“ sprach Aspriân,
„in-truth“ spoke Asprian,

ir lâzit die burc stân.
you let the castle stand.

sich havent dâr gelâzin nidere
themselves have there let down

der zwelefboden sivene
of-the twelve-apostles seven

unde die vile gôde
and the very good

Constantînis môder,
Constantine's mother,

Helena, die daz crûce vant,
Helena, who the cross found,

dâr got die werlt ane intbant,
where God the world on unbound,

nâch der ûfferstande
after the resurrection

lôste mit sîner hande.
freed with his hand.

der Adâmen valde,
who Adam felled,

er nicht vermîden newolde
he not avoid would

daz ime der alde got verbôt.
what to-him the old God forbade.

die unsich hât gebiledôt,
who us has fashioned,

her hettis allis gewalt.
he had-of-it all power.

beide berc unde walt
both hill and forest

scûf her unde die lufte
created he and the airs

mit sînin mânkrefte.
with his might.

swer deme icht gedienit,
whoever to-him anything serves,

deme wirt wol gelônit,
to-him is well rewarded,

daz ime sîne dinc wole stênt
that to-him his affairs well stand

unde ime nimmir mê zegênt
and to-him never more go-to-pieces

von êwin wan zen êwin.
from eternity unto the eternities.

nû scônit des aldin hêrren“
now spare of-the old lord“

sprach des riese Aspriân,
spoke the giant Asprian,

„daz dunkit mich gôt getân“.
„that seems to-me good done“.

Widolt vorchte den heilant,
Widolt feared the Savior,

des wart hê over alle die lant
of-that was he over all the lands

gemeine sît den recken.
common since among-the warriors.

her sprach: „heiliger trechtin,
he spoke: „holy Lord,

waz woldis dû mînis armen man?
what wouldst thou of-me poor man?

nû ich die wizze nîne hân,
now I the wit not-at-all have,

sô der lîf irstervit,
when the body dies,

waz sal der sêlen werden?
what shall of-the soul become?

owî daz ich ie geborin wart!
alas that I ever born was!

mir riet der tûvel sîne vart,
me counseled the devil his journey,

daz ich arme tôre
that I poor fool

die burc wolde zestôren.
the castle would destroy.

grôz sint mîne sculde.
great are my guilts.

ich hette dîne hulde
I would-have thy favor

gerne, trechtin hêre,
gladly, Lord noble,

unde vorchte vile sêre,
and fear very sorely,

sô dû mich lieze gewerden,
if thou me shouldst-let become,

dû lâzes mich irstervin
thou leavest me to-die

alsô in mînin sundin.
so in my sins.

nû ist daz afgrunde
now is the abyss

gesezzit den unrechten.
set-for the unrighteous.

wie harde ich vorchte
how hard I fear

sanctum Michâêlen.
saint Michael.

er ist trôst allir sêlen,
he is comfort of-all souls,

vor deme der tûvel gelac —
before whom the devil lay-defeated—

her tede ime einen michelen slach —
he did to-him a great blow—

in vûre und in glûde.
in fire and in glow.

von sîme overmûde
from his arrogance

is hê verstôzen
is he cast-out

von allin sînen genôzin“.
from all his peers“.

Die riesen allentsament
The giants all-together

worfin die stangin ûz der hant.
threw the staves out-of the hand.

durc den êwigen got,
for the eternal God,

der in ze levene gebôt,
who to-them to life commanded,

liezen sie Constantînople stân;
let they Constantinople stand;

iz newâre anders nicht getân.
it were otherwise not done.

XXI · CONSTANTINE YIELDS

Berchter persuades Rother to spare Constantine and his city, and Rother thanks him for his lifelong care. Constantine laments his folly and begs the queen to lead their daughter out to Rother, and the queen reproaches him for his arrogance. He rides out himself with his daughter and eighty ladies. Erwin urges Rother to receive Constantine, Asprian wants him struck, and Berchter counsels courtesy, so Rother welcomes his wife and her parents, and the queen warns Constantine off the raging Widolt. The queen gives him the daughter as his spouse, Arnold is crowned king in Greece at Constantine's request, and the hosts disperse.

Rôther heiz vor sich gân
Rother bade before himself go

Lûppoldin den getrûwin man
Lupold the faithful man

unde Berkeren den rîchen,
and Berchter the rich,

der riet ime wîslîche.
who counseled him wisely.

hê sprach: „nû scône, koninc hêre,
he spoke: „now spare, king noble,

godis unde dîner sêle,
of-God and of-thy soul,

des hâstû grôze êre,
of-that hast-thou great honor,

unde heiz die burc lâzin stân.
and bid the castle let stand.

wirt Constantîno icht getân,
(if)-is to-Constantine anything done,

sô sî wir sculdich irkorn
so are we guilty chosen

unde sîn êwelîche verloren.
and are eternally lost.

Constantînum den rîchen
Constantine the rich

vorchtich vreislîche.
feared-I terribly.

nû sal hê des geniezen.
now shall he of-it enjoy.

der uns gewerden hieze,
who us become bade,

got der gildit harde vil.
God he repays very much.

swenne sich der mensche ovir wil,
whenever himself the man over wills,

sô tût hê unrechte.
so does he wrongly.

jâ sprichit unse trechtin,
yea speaks our Lord,

swer in bit trûwen meine,
whoever him with faith loves,

der sî in êwin reine.
he is in eternity pure.

nû sende, trût hêrre mîn,
now send, dear lord mine,

nâ deme wîve dîn“.
after the woman thine“.

Dô sprach der koninc rîche
Then spoke the king rich

harde wîsclîche:
very wisely:

„sint mir der vater starf
„since to-me the father died

und icht der bevolen wart,
and I to-thee entrusted was,

sô wêrest dû mînir êren
so wert thou of-my honors

willich immir mêre.
willing ever more.

dû trûdis mich nacht unde tach,
thou cherishedst me night and day,

daz mir ze leide nicht gescach
that to-me to sorrow nothing happened

unde dû zugis mich alse dîn kint —
and thou rearedst me as thy child—

daz wâren kristenlîche dinc —
that were Christian things—

unde lêrdis mich gôde knechte
and taughtest me good knights

haven nâch iren rechte.
have according-to their right.

nû lâze dich got der guode
now let thee God the good

durch sîn ôtmôde
for his humility

geniezen aller trûwin.
enjoy of-all faithfulness.

dû salt mich immir rouwin;
thou shalt me ever grieve;

is daz ich dich overleve,
(if)-is that I thee outlive,

sone mochte mir nimir leidir wesin“.
so might to-me never more-sorrowful be“.

Des koningis gekôse
The king's converse

was ime valslôse.
was to-him without-falseness.

sie hôten sich der sunde.
they guarded themselves from-the sin.

done dorsten sê vor den scanden
then dared they for the disgraces

gereden nehein helet gôder,
speak no hero good,

wan des ime was ze môde
except what to-him was to spirit

wider iegelîchen man.
toward each man.

dô wâren die vorsten lovesan
then were the princes praiseworthy

unde leveten inme rîche
and lived in-the realm

mit trouwin stâdiclîche.
with faith steadfastly.

Constantîn der rîche
Constantine the rich

der vorste ime vreislîche.
he feared him terribly.

hê sprach zô der koningîn:
he spoke to the queen:

„owî trût vrouwe mîn,
„alas dear lady mine,

daz ich ie den lîf mîn gewan!
that I ever the life mine won!

mich slânt Rôtheres man.
me slay Rother's men.

wie grôzer kintheit ic gewêlt,
what great childishness I wielded,

daz ich ime sîn wîf nam!
that I from-him his woman took!

dâr gescach mir ovele an,
there happened to-me ill on,

iz was ouch alliz âne nôt.
it was also all without need.

hê hette mir wol gedienôt.
he had to-me well served.

des woldich deme rîchen
for-that would-I the rich-one

hûde bôslîche
today wickedly

lônin mit deme galgin.
reward with the gallows.

iz begegenit allinthalvin
it meets on-all-sides

dicke den man,
often the man,

swaz hê dan hât getân.
whatever he then has done.

die grôve hetich gegravin,
the pit had-I dug,

ic môz dar selve în varin,
I must there self into fare,

so iz allir wêtlîchest ist,
so it of-all most-likely is,

mich innere der waldendige Crist
me unless-save the all-ruling Christ

unde die gûde koningîn.
and the good queen.

nû nim die scône tochter mîn
now take the fair daughter mine

unde vôre sie deme helede
and lead her to-the hero

ûz der burc intgegene
out-of the castle toward

unde bide in durch got den gôdin
and ask him for God the good

gedenkin mînir nôde,
to-think of-my distress,

daz hê mich lâze genesen.
that he me let survive.

ich wil immir mê wesen
I will ever more be

zô Constantînopole werchaft,
at Constantinople making-amends,

daz man sît biz an den tômis tach
that one afterward until at the doom's day

* * *
(lacuna)

daz hê ze Constantînopole hât getân,
what he at Constantinople has done,

do in Rôther nîne lîz irhân".
when him Rother not-at-all let hang".

Dô sprach die koningîn:
Then spoke the queen:

„wes vorstis dû, Constantîn?
„what fearest thou, Constantine?

der helfint die koninge
to-thee help the kings

von wôster Babilônie,
of desert Babylon,

daz dû Rôtheren hâis.
that thou Rother hang.

waz of dû in noch gevâis?
what if thou him yet catch?

dînis overtrûwens sca[n]den,
thy over-trust's disgraces,

ich nemochtis dir ze ∗∗∗ nie gesagin.
I could-it to-thee at (lacuna) never tell.

dû versmâdes harde got,
thou scornedst hard God,

der uns ze levene gebôt,
who to-us to life commanded,

unde volgedis deme vertrivenin,
and followedst the banished-one,

die legede[n] dich dar nidere.
who laid thee there down.

umbe diesin wêr iz bezzir;
about this-one were it better;

gener leget dich in daz wazzir,
yonder-one lays thee into the water,

dâr dû inde dîne gadin
where thou and thy fellows

nemugin geswimmin noch gewadin.
can-not swim nor wade.

von dû machdû wol verstân,
from that mayst-thou well understand,

daz nechein dinc dem man
that no thing to-the man

grôzeren scaden dût
greater harm does

dan der leide overmût,
than the hateful arrogance,

dâr von der tûevel gewan,
from which the devil won,

daz ime nimer zeran,
that to-him never fails,

ochis noch achis
woe nor alas

noch allis ungemachis,
nor of-all discomfort,

des hât hê immer genûch,
of-that has he ever enough,

und givêris och dir, of dû nâ ime dûst“.
and gives-he-it also to-thee, if thou after him dost“.

Constantîn saz in trechtin,
Constantine sat in thoughts,

wie hê genesen mochte
how he survive might

vor Rôtheres gestin.
before Rother's guests.

dô dâchte hê des bestin,
then thought he of-the best,

sîne tochter heiz her vore gân
his daughter bade he forth go

in ire gewande lossam.
in her clothing lovely.

dô zierede [man] megede unde wîf
then adorned [one] maidens and women

mit vlîze den iren lîf;
with diligence the their persons;

sie trôgin kurzebolde,
they wore short-robes,

gelîstet mit deme golde,
bordered with the gold,

unde mit edelen gesteine
and with noble gems

gewîret vile kleine.
wired very finely.

vor Constantînin den rîchin
before Constantine the rich

giengen gezogenlîchen
went courteously

achtich scône vrouwin
eighty fair ladies

mit goldînen krônen.
with golden crowns.

Dô quâmen die zeldere inde die ros
Then came the palfreys and the horses

ûffe den Pôderamus hof.
upon the Poderamus court.

dâ klappende daz gesteine
there clattered the gems

mit den îsperlîn kleine
with the ice-pearls small

an den vorebougin.
on the breast-straps.

mit samîte grûnin
with samite green

wâren die sadele bezogin,
were the saddles covered,

iz inhaven dê bûche gelogin.
it unless-have the books lied.

dâr sâzen Constantînis kint
there sat Constantine's children

ûf ein sîdîn gewint.
upon a silken cloth.

der koninc reit âne sîne man
the king rode without his men

under den vrouwin lossam.
among the ladies lovely.

bî deme reit die koningîn
by him rode the queen

unde die lieve tochter sîn.
and the dear daughter his.

dâr lûchte ein karbunkil —
there shone a carbuncle—

dâr newart nimmir dunkil — 4600
there was never dark—

ovene ûz der krônin.
above out-of the crown.

achzich vrouwin scône
eighty ladies fair

vôrde der koninc Constantîn
led the king Constantine

mit der lievin tochter sîn
with the dear daughter his

Rôthere deme helede 4605
to-Rother the hero

ûz der burc intgegene,
out-of the castle toward,

daz sie deme Rôtheres ∗∗∗
that they to-the Rother's (lacuna)

∗∗∗
(lacuna)

Wie die zoume klungin,
How the bridles rang,

dô die vrouwin drungin
when the ladies pressed

ûz der burc in widerstrît! 4610
out-of the castle in rivalry!

dâr lûchte daz Rôtheres wîp
there shone the Rother's woman

vor andren wîven over lant
before other women over land

als ein bernender jâchant.
like a burning jacinth.

daz irsach der grâve Erwîn,
that saw the count Erwin,

hê sprach zô deme hêrren sîn:
he spoke to the lord his:

„dâr komit dîn leide swâgir,
„there comes thy hateful father-in-law,

dû salt in wol intfâhen.
thou shalt him well receive.

gedenke der aldin zuchte und êrin,
think of-the old breeding and honors,

wie hie bevoren die hêrren
how here before the lords

ir leit liezin durc got.
their sorrow left for God.

nu nemache der werlde necheinin spot
now make of-the world no mockery

an deme gôdin knechte.
on the good knight.

daz komit dir rechte,
that comes to-thee rightly,

nû der kuninc Constantîn
now the king Constantine

rîdit ûz intgegin dî,
rides out toward thee,

daz dû ime lâzis den lîf.
that thou to-him leave the life.

hê bringit dir daz scôniste wîf".
he brings to-thee the fairest woman".

„iz wêre vil wol“ sprach Aspriân,
„it were very well“ spoke Asprian,

„worde ime ein bôlslac geslân“.
„were to-him a bruise-blow struck“.

Dô sprach gezoginlîche
Then spoke courteously

Berker der rîche:
Berchter the rich:

„neinâ, hêrre Aspriân,
„no, lord Asprian,

hie sal die zucht vore gân;
here shall the breeding forward go;

nû hê undir den vrouwin ist komin
now he among the ladies is come

unde hette her benumin
and had he taken

allin mînin kindin den lîf,
from-all my children the life,

wir sulin êren dise wîf
we shall honor these women

an deme rîchen koninge,
in the rich king,

iz quême uns anders ovele.
it came to-us otherwise ill.

alse der man genâdhin gerit,
when the man grace desires,

iz ist recht der in gewerit“.
it is right who him grants“.

Rôther der rîche
Rother the rich

sprach gvôclîche:
spoke fittingly:

„nû nâr, wîgande,
„now nearer, fighters,

von rômischen lande!
of Roman land!

intfât Constantînin
receive Constantine

durch den willin mînin!“
for the sake mine!“

dô gînc der herzoge von Merân
then went the duke of Meran

intgigin der vrouwen lossam.
toward the ladies lovely.

Lûppolt unde Erwîn
Lupold and Erwin

intfiengen die koningîn.
received the queen.

Rôther kuste sîn wîf,
Rother kissed his woman,

si was ime alse der lîf.
she was to-him as the life.

hê kuste ouch die aldin koningîn
he kissed also the old queen

unde heiz si willekome sîn.
and bade her welcome be.

Wolfrât der wîgant
Wolfrat the fighter

nam Constantîne bî der hant.
took Constantine by the hand.

dô in Widolt gesach,
when him Widolt saw,

ovillîche hê sprach,
evilly he spoke,

her lach inde beiz in die stangin,
he lay and bit into the staff,

daz die vôris flamme
that the fire's flames

dar ûz vôren dicke,
there out went often,

die vreislîchen blicke
the terrible glances

sach man an deme kônin man.
saw one on the bold man.

dar nemochte nêman zô gegân,
there could no-one to go,

sine rededen ime vil evene mide.
unless-they spoke to-him very evenly with.

hê hôf die meisten unside,
he raised the greatest misbehavior,

des hê immir began,
which he ever began,

ze wilichen hantwerke hê quam.
to whatever handiwork he came.

Wie rechte die koningîn gesach
How rightly the queen saw

daz Widolt unsitich was!
that Widolt ill-mannered was!

zô Constantîno deme rîchen
to Constantine the rich

sprach si gezogenlîche:
spoke she courteously:

„dû solt vor Rôthere stân.
„thou shalt before Rother stand.

dort steit Aspriânes man;
there stands Asprian's man;

sîn gemôte ist herte.
his spirit is hard.

waz of dich dînis gevertis
what if thee of-thy companions

noch hûde selve irvilt?
yet today self fells?

nû warde wie jenez kint spilit,
now look how yonder child plays,

daz ime die vûirflammin
that to-him the fire-flames

scrickint ûz der stangin.
leap out-of the staff.

wene durch des koningis êre
except for the king's honor

dune bescouwedis nimmer mêre
thou wouldst-behold never more

weder lûde noch lant,
neither people nor land,

dich slôge der selve vâlant.
thee should-slay the same devil.

inbrêche her von den lannin,
should-break-loose he from the chains,

dîn levent wêre irgangin".
thy life were ended".

Die koningîn ir tochter nam,
The queen her daughter took,

eine vrouwe lossam:
a lady lovely:

„Rôther, hêrre mîn,
„Rother, lord mine,

diz ist die êchone dîn,
this is the spouse thine,

die nim in dîne gewalt,
her take into thy power,

swie dû gebûdist, helet balt.
however thou commandest, hero bold.

got lône dir maniger êren
God reward thee many honors

unde allin disin hêren,
and all these lords,

die si zû mir hânt getân.
which they to me have done.

Berker von Merân,
Berchter of Meran,

dû bist ein ûz irwelet helt,
thou art an out chosen hero,

zô allin trouwin irwelt,
to all faithfulness chosen,

unde irkennis och unsin trechtin.
and knowest also our Lord.

dîn môdir mûze sâlich sîn,
thy mother must blessed be,

daz si dich ie getrûch.
that she thee ever bore.

dû bist biderve unde gôt.
thou art worthy and good.

dîn zucht is hûte wole scîn,
thy breeding is today well shown,

sît der koninc Constantîn
since the king Constantine

mit deme lîve intgât,
with the life escapes,

sô vile hê dir leides getân hât".
so much he to-thee of-sorrow done has".

si sprach deme gôtin knechte
she spoke to-the good knight

wol mit grôzeme rechte:
well with great right:

im was ie allir haz leit;
to-him was ever all hatred sorrow;

des beherdint die bûch die wârheit.
of-that maintain the books the truth.

Dô sprach der koninc Constantîn:
Then spoke the king Constantine:

„Rôther, lîve hêrre mîn,
„Rother, dear lord mine,

heiz Arnolde here vore gân,
bid Arnold hither forth go,

ich wil deme tugenthaften man
I will to-the virtuous man

durch sîne dugint gevin,
for his virtue give,

daz her immir samfte mag levin,
that he ever gently may live,

der dich nerin wolde“.
who thee save would“.

dô krônete man in mit golde
then crowned one him with gold

unde lêch ime ein lant dâr.
and lent to-him a land there.

dô wart hê koninc n Grêciâ.
then became he king in Greece.

die vonf dûsint hêrren,
the five thousand lords,

die mit ime geriden wâren
who with him ridden were

ûz der burich lossam,
out-of the castle lovely,

die wurdin bit handen sîne man.
they became with hands his men.

dô reit hê vrôlîche
then rode he joyfully

in daz sîn rîche
into the his realm

inde levete mit grôzin êrin,
and lived with great honors,

die hetter immir mêre
them had-he ever more

bizze an sînin tôt.
until to his death.

sus wart ime gelônôt.
thus was to-him rewarded.

gedâchte des noch etlîch junc man —
should-think of-it yet many-a young man—

iz nistûnde ime nicht ovele an —
it would-stand to-him not ill on—

unde dienete vlîzlîche,
and served diligently,

ime lônete etlîche.
him would-reward some-one.

Die hêrren rûmpten iz dâr.
The lords cleared it there.

Arnolt vôr in Grêciâ.
Arnold fared into Greece.

die koningîn gînc umbe
the queen went around

unde kuste besunder
and kissed separately

alle Rôtheres man.
all Rother's men.

si heiz sie gode bevolin varin.
she bade them to-God commended fare.

Wolfrât der wîgant
Wolfrat the fighter

nam achzich dûsint bî der hant
took eighty thousand by the hand

und brâchte si vile scîre
and brought them very quickly

zô eime scônin kiele,
to a fair keel,

die vôrde der koninc Rôthere
which led the king Rother

mit sîneme wîfe over mere.
with his woman over sea.

dô heiz der riese Aspriân
then bade the giant Asprian

die lûde in den kiel gân.
the people into the keel go.

die hêren vôren alle samt
the lords fared all together

wider hein in ir lant.
back home into their land.

dô reit der hêrre Constantîn
then rode the lord Constantine

unde die rîche koningîn
and the rich queen

zô Constantînopole,
to Constantinople,

der mâren burge.
the famous castle.

in nerou sîn tochter nicht:
him rued his daughter not:

Rôtheres êre was ime lief.
Rother's honor was to-him dear.

On the day the fleet lands at Bari, the queen bears a son, Pippin, and Bertha, who later bore Charles, sings him to sleep. Rother rewards his followers with lands: Grimme and the giants take Scotland, Asprian Reims, Erwin Spain, Wolfrat Austria, Bohemia, and Poland, and Lupold Kerlingen. The giants pledge their help, and Berchter rides home in jeweled armor. When Pippin is grown, an assembly is called at Aachen, and all Rother's lords come with their hosts.

Die kiele begundin evene gân.
The keels began evenly to-go.

Rôthere unde sîne man
Rother and his men

vôren vrôlîche
fared joyfully

ingegen rômeschen rîche
toward Roman realm

her wider ze Bâre ûf den sant.
hither back to Bari upon the sand.

dar vromete man ros unde gewant
there sent one horses and clothing

und alliz dat in deme kiele was.
and all that in the keel was.

die vrouwe Pipînis genas
the lady of-Pippin was-delivered

an deme selven tage,
on the same day,

dô si quâmen zô deme stade.
when they came to the shore.

Lûppolt der getrûwe man
Lupold the faithful man

geinc vor Rôtheren stân.
went before Rother stand.

hê sprach: „vrô weset, hêrre,
he spoke: „glad be, lord,

der lieven nîmêre
of-the dear tidings

die ich iu willin sagin.
which I to-you will tell.

iur wîf hât einin sun gedragin“.
your woman has a son borne“.

der koninc vor leive up spranc:
the king for joy up sprang:

„hêre got, nû have danc!
„lord God, now have thanks!

waz dû genâden hâst getân
what thou of-graces hast done

zû mir vil sundigin man!
to me very sinful man!

ich sie wal, dê bit dî bestât,
I see well, who with thee stays,

dat ime nimmer zegât
that to-him never fails

des êwigen rîchis.
of-the eternal realm.

dû hilfis ime stâdenclîche“.
thou helpest him steadfastly“.

Sic hûven capellâne,
Themselves raised chaplains,

dô sie die rede vernâmen,
when they the speech perceived,

unde touften daz kindelîn,
and baptized the little-child,

daz wart geheizen Pippîn.
that was called Pippin.

dô quam vil manich amme
then came very many-a nurse

in die burc gegangin
into the castle walking

unde zugen daz kint bit vorten.
and reared the child with fears.

sin beslîf it Berten,
him sang-to-sleep it Bertha,

eine vrouwen vile gût,
a lady very good,

die sît Karlen getrûch.
who afterward Charles bore.

von dû nesulit ir dit lît
from that shall you this song

den andren gelîchin nit,
to-the others liken not,

wandit sô manich recht hât,
for-it so many-a right has,

danne ime die wârheit instât.
whence to-it the truth stands.

Rôther in deme hove saz:
Rother in the court sat:

wie michil dat gedranc was
how great the throng was

vor deme koninge lossam!
before the king lovely!

dô hugede iegelîch man
then hoped each man

wider heim in sîn lant,
back home into his land,

wande si in der herverde
for they in the war-journey

manige zît harde
many-a time hard

hetten gewunnin.
had won.

beide alden ande jungin
both old and young

bâdin in gevin urlof,
begged him give leave,

si woldin rûmen den hof.
they would quit the court.

der koninc sich in zô vôzin bôt
the king himself to-them at feet offered

unde bat si durc got:
and begged them for God:

„neinâ, mâge unde man,
„no, kinsmen and men,

ir sult mit mir bestân.
you shall with me stay.

nû wart durch got scône,
now wait for God fairly,

biz ich iu gelône.
until I you reward.

iz wâre die meiste scande
it were the greatest disgrace

die in sicheinen lande
which in any land

ie ênich man gesach".
ever any man saw".

manich gût knecht dô sprach:
many-a good knight then spoke:

„nein ir, hêrre, wêzgot,
„no you, lord, God-knows,

ir havet uns wal gelônet“.
you have us well rewarded“.

dô sprac der riese Aspriân:
then spoke the giant Asprian:

„wir sulin hie bestân.
„we shall here stay.

ich nekome nimmir hinne
I come never hence

âne des koningis minne“.
without the king's love“.

Rôther der rîche
Rother the rich

lônede vromiclîche
rewarded valiantly

den gûden knechten allent samint.
the good knights all together.

[lêch hê die rîchen Scottelant
[*lent he the rich Scotland*

unde] deme helede Grimme,
and] to-the hero Grimme,

der bûete dâr inne
who dwelt there in

bit michelen êren.
with great honors.

Aspriâne gaf hê Rêmis
to-Asprian gave he Reims

unde lêch ime die marke,
and lent to-him the march,

der hette gedienet starke.
who had served strongly.

den zên riesen allent samt
to-the ten giants all together

lêch hê die rîchen Scotland.
lent he the rich Scotland.

Lotringin unde Brâbant,
Lorraine and Brabant,

Vriesen unde Hollant
Frisia and Holland

gaf hê vier hêren,
gave he to-four lords,

die mit ime wâren
who with him were

ûz ir lande gevarin,
out-of their land fared,

die hetten herzogin namen.
who had dukes' names.

hê mêrten allin ir gût,
he increased to-all their goods,

sie hetten ime wol gedienôt.
they had him well served.

Rôther saz bit voller hant
Rother sat with full hand

und deilte wîdene die lant,
and dealt widely the lands,

hê rîchede manigen.
he enriched many.

Erwîne gaf hê Ispanien.
to-Erwin gave he Spain.

Sassen unde Turinge,
Saxony and Thuringia,

Plîsnin und Swurven
Pleissen and the-Sorbs

gaf hê zên grâven
gave he to-ten counts

die mit Lûppolde wâren
who with Lupold were

over mere gevaren.
over sea fared.

her nam ir allir gûde ware.
he took of-them all good heed.

die ime icht lieves hetten getân,
who to-him anything of-love had done,

die neverluren dâ nit an.
they lost there not on.

dane was nehên scaz mê lief,
there was no treasure more dear,

er nebôt och die rosse nit,
he offered also the horses not,

mit der breidin erdin
with the broad earth

mûsten gelônet werden.
must rewarded be.

Hie saget uns der richtêre
Here tells us the poet

von deme liede mêre,
of the song more,

dat is den vromin allin lîf,
that is to-the valiant all dear,

die bôsen negelouvent is nit.
the wicked believe it not.

sine hânt der vromechêde nicht getân
they have of-the valor not done

und ingetrûwent der geinen man.
and trust there no man.

Rôther saz in trechten
Rother sat in thoughts

unde gaf alliz daz hê mochte.
and gave all that he might.

dô heiz hê ime gewinnin
then bade he to-himself win

den hêrren von Tengelingin
the lord of Tengelingen

unde gaf ime Ôsterrîche,
and gave him Austria,

her gaf ime wârlîche
he gave him truly

Behein unde Polen,
Bohemia and Poland,

daz hê sich deste baz mochte begân.
that he himself the-more better might maintain.

done gewas bî dem mer
then was by the sea

weder sît noch êr
neither since nor before

nechên sô stadehafter man.
no so substantial man.

iz was ime allez underdân.
it was to-him all subject.

her hette des gôdes michele macht
he had of-the goods great power

unde was der rechten vorsten slach
and was of-the true princes' kind

die alle sô irsturbin,
who all so died,

dat sie nie bezigin newordin
that they never accused were

valskes widir niheinin man.
of-falsehood against any man.

ir ende was gôt unde lovesam.
their end was good and praiseworthy.

Rôther wol gedâchte
Rother well thought

wer ime wole gedienit hâte.
who to-him well served had.

Lûppoldin den getrûwin man
Lupold the faithful man

her heiz vor sich gân
he bade before himself go

unde machete den helt jungin
and made the hero young

koninc zô Karlungin
king in Kerlingen

unde gaf ime Berkeris gewalt,
and gave him Berchter's power,

Pulge unde Ceciljinlant.
Apulia and Sicily.

von dû wart ime sîn lên breit,
from that became to-him his fief broad,

daz Berker mit sîme scilde bereit.
which Berchter with his shield rode-over.

manigin winter kaldin
many-a winter cold

vil dicke deme alden
very often to-the old-one

sîn bart rinne began:
his beard to-run began:

er was ein unbedrozzin man.
he was an unwearied man.

Die hêrren gertin alle samint
The lords desired all together

geleidis ûffe daz lant.
escort upon the land.

dô sprach Aspriân:
then spoke Asprian:

„wan rîtit ir dar an?
„why ride you there on?

swen dâr ieman bestât,
whomever there anyone attacks,

wie gewis er den mînin schilt hât!“
how certain he the mine shield has!“

des antwerde dô Witolt:
of-that answered then Widolt:

„ich bin in allin holt,
„I am to-them all devoted,

die Rôther sîn underdân:
who to-Rother are subject:

der nelâzich nimmir nicheinin man,
of-them leave-I never any man,

swâ ich von ime hôre sagen,
where I of him hear tell,

dar mich die vôze mogen getragen“.
thither me the feet may carry“.

dô sprâchan Aspriânes man,
then spoke Asprian's men,

sine woldin dâr heime nicht bestân,
they would there at-home not stay,

bedorster immir mêre
should-need-them ever more

Rôther der hêrre:
Rother the lord:

„swer ime iecht wolde dôn,
„whoever to-him anything would do,

wir zebrâchin in alse ein hôn“.
we would-break him like a hen“.

do gezême ∗∗∗ beide nît unde spot
then befitted (lacuna) both envy and mockery

virbûtit der waldindigir got,
forbids the all-ruling God,

alsiz was wîtin
as-it was widely

bî Rôtheres gezîtin.
in Rother's times.

dô neplac sîn nieman,
then practiced it no-one,

iz nemôste ime an den lîf gân.
it unless-must to-him at the life go.

von dû wistin sie wole
from that knew they well

beide heime unde zô hofe,
both at-home and at court,

swer deme andrin icht geheiz,
whoever to-the other anything promised,

daz her dat wâr liet,
that he that true left,

iz nebenême ime der tôt
it unless-took from-him the death

oder êhaft nôt.
or lawful need.

Rôther dô kuste —
Rother then kissed—

wie wol in des geluste! —
how well him of-that pleased!—

manigin wârhaftin man.
many-a truthful man.

die ros man satilin began
the horses one to-saddle began

widir heim in ir lant.
back home into their land.

dô reit ûffe blankin marhe
then rode upon white steed

in lêchtime geserwe
in bright armor

von Rôthere deme rîchen
from Rother the rich

ein hêrre werlîche.
a lord warlike.

der vôrte an den beinin
he wore on the legs

mit edilime gesteine
with noble gems

zwô hosin wol gezîrôt,
two hose well adorned,

mit golde gewîrôt.
with gold wired.

er vôrte an sînem schilde
he bore on his shield

ein tier samt iz spilde
a beast as-if it played

ûz deme golde êrlîch,
out-of the gold honorable,

eime capelûne gelîch,
to-a dragon-beast alike,

dar umme lâgin steine
there about lay gems

grôz unde kleine,
great and small,

die daz leicht bârin
which the light bore

alsiz sterren wâren.
as-if-it stars were.

ime stûnt umme des schildis rant
to-him stood about the shield's rim

manich gôt jâchant;
many-a good jacinth;

in deme satilbogin sîn
in the saddle-bow his

stûndin swanin guldîn.
stood swans golden.

ûffe deme helme lac ein stein,
upon the helm lay a stone,

der umme mitte nacht schein
which about mid night shone

in allen den gebâren
in all the bearing

alsez liecht tac wâre.
as-if-it bright day were.

den brâchte Alexander
it brought Alexander

von vremidime lande,
from strange land,

dar nie nichein kristin man
where never any Christian man

weder ê noch sin nequam.
neither before nor since came.

Der stein hiez Claugestiân,
The stone was-called Claugestian,

den vôrde ein aldgrîsir man,
it bore a gray-old man,

deme was die bart harte breit.
to-whom was the beard very broad.

ei wie vermezzelîche her reit!
eh how boldly he rode!

ime gînc daz marc in sprungen
to-him went the steed in leaps
baz dan eime jungin.
better than to-a young-one.
urlof her zô deme koninge nam;
leave he from the king took;
iz was der herzoge von Merân,
it was the duke of Meran,
nâch deme dâr heime
for whom there at-home
sîn wîf dicke weinite.
his woman often wept.
der rîche got von himele
the rich God from heaven
santin ir sît widere.
sent-him to-her afterward back.
Dô der herzoge von Merân
When the duke of Meran
zô deme koninge urlof genam,
from the king leave took,
dô rietin sie alle dannen.
then rode they all thence.
die hêrren dô sungin,
the lords then sang,
die marc begundin springin;
the steeds began to-leap;
dar wart von den vrouwin
there was by the ladies
michil schouwin.
great gazing.
Rôther wranc die hande:
Rother wrung the hands:
„nû bin ich ellende.
„now am I exiled.

noch sal die welt gewis sîn,
yet shall the world certain be,

môz ich haven den lîf mîn,
(if)-may I have the life mine,

daz ich gerne mîn guot,
that I gladly my goods,

same der edele arn tôt,
as the noble eagle does,

wil teilin gelîche
will share alike

armin unde rîchen,
to-poor and rich,

swer iz an mich sôchit
whoever it of me seeks

unde is mit êren gerôchit,
and of-it with honors cares,

die wîle ich ein brôt hân".
the while I a bread have".

Widolt unde Aspriân
Widolt and Asprian

unde andere Rôtheres man
and other Rother's men

vôrin in ere rîche
fared into their realms

unde begîngin sich vromelîche
and conducted themselves valiantly

mit grôzin êrin, daz is wâr,
with great honors, that is true,

zwei unde zwênzic jâr.
two and twenty years.

Under des gewôchs Pippîn,
Under that grew Pippin,

daz her koninc mochte sîn.
that he king might be.

Rôther der rîche
Rother the rich

half ime vromichlîche,
helped him valiantly,

alse noch manich man
as yet many-a man

sîme sone grôzir êrin [ge]gan.
to-his son of-great honors grants.

Rôthere saz dâr heime —
Rother sat there at-home—

got irliet in aller leide —
God spared him all sorrow—

unde zôch Pippînin,
and reared Pippin,

den lieven sone sînin,
the dear son his,

mit grôzin êrin, daz is wâr,
with great honors, that is true,

vier unde zwênzic jâr,
four and twenty years,

bit der tûrlîcher degen
until the excellent thane

gerne swert wolde nemen.
gladly sword would take.

dô wart ein lantsprâche
then was a land-assembly

gebodin hin zô Âche,
summoned thither to Aachen,

dar vil manich vrome man
where very many-a valiant man

mit sîme hergesellen quam,
with his war-comrades came,

gevazzit vromiclîche,
equipped valiantly,

wîtin ûz deme rîche.
widely out-of the realm.

ûffe den hof quâmin Rôtheres man,
upon the court came Rother's men,

dâr Pippîn dat swert nam.
where Pippin the sword took.

dar quam die riese Aspriân
there came the giant Asprian

unde Widolt der kône man
and Widolt the bold man

unde der helt Grimme,
and the hero Grimme,

der riesen ingesinde,
of-the giants household,

der was griuwelîche getân.
who was gruesomely made.

dô brâchte der riese Aspriân
then brought the giant Asprian

sivin hundrit manne
seven hundred men

mit îserînen stangin.
with iron staves.

Dô reit durch frenkische lant
Then rode through Frankish land

Wolfrât der wîgant
Wolfrat the fighter

mit scôneme ingesinde.
with fair household.

der hêrre von Tengelingin
the lord of Tengelingen

der vôrte wundirinkône man,
he led wondrous-bold men,

drîzic dûsint lossam,
thirty thousand lovely,

ûffe den hof zô Âche
upon the court at Aachen

zô der lantsprâche.
to the land-assembly.

von Ispaniâ Erwîn
from Spain Erwin

und Lûppolt der meister sîn,
and Lupold the master his,

die wâren beide rîche
they were both rich

unde vôrin gezogenlîche.
and fared courteously.

durch Pippingis willin
for Pippin's sake

brâchte von Kerlingin
brought from Kerlingen

Lûppolt der getrûge man
Lupold the faithful man

sechzic dûsint lossam.
sixty thousand lovely.

hei wie lieve Rôthere was,
hey how glad Rother was,

wande her sie alle gerne gesach!
that he them all gladly saw!

XXIII · PIPPIN KNIGHTED

At a great assembly at Aachen, Pippin is girded with the sword amid jousting. Berchter, old and shorn, comes back and counsels Rother to care for his soul. Rother and his queen take the religious life, the empire stays at peace until Pippin dies and Charles wins the realm, and the poet asks his hearers to pray for him.

Dâr zô Âche wârin sie over nacht
There at Aachen were they over night

unz an den andrin tach.
until to the other day.

alsiz des morgenis tagete,
as-it in-the morning dawned,

ûffe deme rosse havete
upon the horse held

Pippîn der helt gôt
Pippin the hero good

mit golde wole gezîrôt.
with gold well adorned.

die mar begundin springin
the steeds began to-leap

under den jungelingin.
among the youths.

dô burdêrete manich man,
then jousted many-a man,

dâr Pippîn swert nam.
where Pippin sword took.

Widolt unde Grimme
Widolt and Grimme

liefin in deme ringe.
ran in the ring.

die riesen dô tunidin
the giants then thundered

daz die erde bibite.
that the earth trembled.

zô Âche was die hêrscaft
at Aachen was the lordship

drê tage unde drî nacht.
three days and three nights.

dô hôbin sich gelîche
then raised themselves alike

arme unde rîche.
poor and rich.

die bestûndin alle samt
they stayed all together

von Rôtheres sone daz lant,
of Rother's son the land,

alse sîn vater sturve,
when his father should-die,

daz Pippîn keiser wurde.
that Pippin emperor should-become.

Die swertleite was getân.
The sword-girding was done.

dô zôch iegelîch man
then drew each man

hin zô sîme lande.
thither to his land.

dâr leveten sie âne schande.
there lived they without disgrace.

Rôther der rîche
Rother the rich

der levete vromiclîche.
he lived valiantly.

Dô der koninc Pippîn
When the king Pippin

vor Rôthere deme vatir sîn
before Rother the father his

daz swert umbe gebant,
the sword about bound,

dô reit her mit manigeme ûf daz lant
then rode he with many-a-one upon the land

unde richte nâch rechte
and judged by right

hêrrin unde knechten.
lords and knights.

dô scheit sich zô Âche
then parted itself at Aachen

die grôze lantsprâche.
the great land-assembly.

Dô quam gestrichin over lant
Then came swept over land

ein snêwîzer wîgant,
a snow-white fighter,

daz hette dat alder getân.
that had the age done.

ime volgeten sîne hereman,
him followed his warriors,

zwei dûsint, daz ist wâr.
two thousand, that is true.

ime was daz edile hâr
to-him was the noble hair

bî den ôrin ave geschorin.
by the ears off shorn.

er was von grunde ûf geborin
he was from ground up born

zô deme aller trûwistin man
to the of-all most-faithful man

den ie sichein kuninc gewan.
whom ever any king won.

er reit durch nûmâre,
he rode for tidings,

waz dâr zô Âche wâre.
what there at Aachen were.

sîn ros was zoumstrenge.
his horse was rein-strong.

iz nestûnt borlange,
it stood-not very-long,

unz in Rôther gesach.
until him Rother saw.

nû mugit ir hôrin wê er sprach:
now may you hear how he spoke:

„wol mich, daz ich mîn lîf hân.
„well-for me, that I my life have.

dort kumit der helt von Merân.
there comes the hero of Meran.

nu intfât in alle die hie sîn".
now receive him all who here are".

„daz dôn ic" sprach dê koningîn.
„that do I" spoke the queen.

die vrouwe lossam
the lady lovely

kuste den helt von Merân
kissed the hero of Meran

wie kûme Rôthere irbeite
how scarcely Rother waited

bit Berker ûf den hof reit!
until Berchter up-to the court rode!

selve intfînc hê sîn rosfert,
self received he his horse,

des was der helt wole wert.
of-that was the hero well worthy.

do intfiengin Rôtheres man,
then received Rother's men,

swaz mit Berkere quam.
whatever with Berchter came.

die gôtin knechte
the good knights

dâtin al rechte,
did all rightly,

wan diz hette der helt gôt
for this had the hero good

vil wole virdienôt,
very well deserved,

dô sîne tage dochten
when his days were-strong

unde sô hê rîtin mochte.
and as he ride might.

Dô Berkêr virnam
When Berchter perceived

waz Pippîn hette getân,
what Pippin had done,

Rôthere deme rîchen
to-Rother the rich

reit her wîslîche:
counseled he wisely:

„nû volge mer, koninc gôte,
„now follow me, king good,

des mer is zô môte,
what to-me is to spirit,

unde helf der armin sêle,
and help the poor soul,

daz ist tugint aller êrin.
that is virtue of-all honors.

dû grâwist, hêrre mîn,
thou grayest, lord mine,

daz dinc nemac immir nicht sîn.
the thing may ever not be.

iz stât den gôtin knechtin
it stands to-the good knights

in ir aldere rechte,
in their age rightly,

daz sie mit gôte virdieneten
that they with good should-earn

sô sie von diser werlde endin.
when they from this world end.

dîn dinch stûnt grôze.
thy affair stood great.

der mînir genôze
of-the my peers

quâmen sechszêne
came sixteen

ûf ir alemêne
upon their alms

unde klagetin, trût hêrre mîn,
and lamented, dear lord mine,

dene liebin vatir dîn,
the dear father thine,

der lac in sînin ende
who lay in his end

unde bevalch dich mir bî der hende.
and entrusted thee to-me by the hand.

sît hân ich dir bî gestân,
since have I thee by stood,

daz dir nichein man
that to-thee no man

argis nicht nebôt,
evil not offered,

her hette uns beiden gedrôt.
unless-he had us both threatened.

nu nemach ich, trût hêrre mîn,
now may I, dear lord mine,

der nechein vrome sîn,
to-thee no profit be,

dune volgis mîneme râde,
unless-thou followest my counsel,

sô bistû aller nôde
so art-thou of-all distress

irlâzin immer mêre
released ever more

unde helfist och der sêle“.
and helpest also the soul“.

Rôther swîgete dô.
Rother was-silent then.

Berker sprach ime aber zô:
Berchter spoke to-him again to:

„daz ist wâr, koninc edele,
„that is true, king noble,

ich nerâde dir nicht ovele.
I counsel to-thee not ill.

nû koufe dir selve gôte wort,
now buy for-thee self good word,

jâ is der schaz alse ein hor
yea is the treasure like a filth

leider unreine;
alas unclean;

wir nevindin sîn nicht dâr heime.
we find it not there at-home.

swê vil der man gewinnit,
however much the man wins,

wie schîre ime zerinnit!
how quickly from-him it-runs-out!

daz ist uns alle tage schîn.
that is to-us all days shown.

nû volge deme râde mîn
now follow the counsel mine

unde helf der armin sêle,
and help the poor soul,

die levet immir mêre.
which lives ever more.

nune lâz dich nicht betrâgin;
now let thee not weary;

swer der gotis genâdin
whoever of-the God's graces

rechte wirdet innin,
rightly becomes aware,

der môz sie immir minnin.
he must them ever love.

dû wêre ie rîche,
thou wert ever rich,

dîn dinch stûnt grôzlîche.
thy affair stood greatly.

waz helfit nû daz?
what helps now that?

getôt ein ander bat,
(if)-does an other better,

er wil dîn overgenôz sîn.
he will thy over-peer be.

nû volge mir, trût hêrre mîn,
now follow me, dear lord mine,

und zê wir hin zô walde.
and draw we thither to forest.

swer genesen wolde,
whoever survive would,

der mochte dâr gerne brôder sîn.
he might there gladly brother be.

wir munichin uns, trût hêrre mîn.
we make-monks ourselves, dear lord mine.

wir sulin der armin sêle wegen;
we shall of-the poor soul take-care;

diz ist ein unstâde leven“.
this is an unsteady life“.

dô sprach der koninc gôte,
then spoke the king good,

daz her dat gerne dâte.
that he that gladly should-do.

Rôther bî der hant nam
Rother by the hand took

die vrouwen alsô lossam
the lady so lovely

unde sagete ir sîn gemô[ch]te.
and told to-her his mind.

dô sprach die vrouwe gôte:
then spoke the lady good:

„iz ist der bezziste rât,
„it is the best counsel,

den Berker getân hât.
which Berchter done has.

nû volge uns, koninc edele,
now follow us, king noble,

iz nekumit dir nicht ubele“.
it comes to-thee not ill“.

dô sprach der ∗∗∗
then spoke the (lacuna)

alsô iz noch hûte stât
as it yet today stands

daz iz vil manige êre hât.
that it very many-a honor has.

dô clûsete sich dê konigîn,
then cloistered herself the queen,
got der gab ir den sin.
God he gave her the sense.
dô stûnden die rômischen rîche
then stood the Roman realms
harde vredelîche,
very peacefully,
wente Pippîn irstarb
until Pippin died
unde Karl daz rîche irwarb.
and Charles the realm won.
der levete sît scône
he lived afterward fairly
unde richte wol dê krône.
and ruled well the crown.
Hî hât [ouch] daz bůch ende.
Here has [also] the book end.
nû valdet ûwer hende
now fold your hands
unde biddet alle got,
and pray all God,
der uns zô levende gebôt,
who to-us to living commanded,
daz her deme richtêre gnêdich sî
that he to-the poet gracious be
unde ouch iuwer nicht ne ***
and also of-you not — (lacuna)